

discontent, and makes them
self²³. Many lose their labour, because they do
not prosecute to the end the good work which
they have begun²⁴. Envy and wrath shorten
life; and anxiety bringeth age before its time²⁵.
Men do not gather grapes of thorns, nor figs of
thistles²⁶.

appears to
dissimulat
and virtue
road to we
message hi
the telegra

EXERCISES.

The verb *to be* has very often an *adjective* after it; and some
adjectives seem so closely combined with it, as to lead young
people to suppose that they have got a passive verb.

No. m.

Piety and rectitude are productive of true
peace and comfort¹. If the powers of the mind
were duly cultivated,* mankind would at all
times be able to derive pleasure from their own
breasts, as rational as it is exalted². Learning
is preferable to riches; but virtue is preferable
to both³. Men who are severe in judging them-
selves are usually charitable to the faults of
others⁴. We were all afraid of the lions⁵: for
we heard them^{2d*} roar⁶. A man may be well
instructed without being also instructive⁷.

Although ten were eligible, only one was
chosen⁸. To study without intermission is im-
possible: relaxation is necessary; but it should
be moderate⁹. The Athenians were conceited
on account of their own wit, science, and polite-
ness¹⁰. We are indebted to our ancestors for
our civil and religious liberty¹¹. Gold would
be less valued, if it were more abundant¹². An
idle person is a kind of man.

1. A verb m
Participle, join
2. A noun i
Adjectives and
that, all, each, e

1. While
ing to wha
speech whe
hearing a le
been prepar
a letter, and
She was wa
We are per
therefore to
learning⁸.
be better⁹.
day¹⁰.

2. Those
good¹¹. Few
Those who⁴
friends, des
obstinacy b
who conten

appears to be²³ so low and mean as lying and dissimulation²³. Vice is its own punishment, and virtue is its own reward²⁴. Industry is the road to wealth, and virtue²⁵ to happiness²⁵. A message flies with the speed of lightning along the telegraphic wires²⁶.

EXERCISES.

73

EXERCISES.

1. A verb may be conjugated with its *Active* or *Incomplete Participle*, joined to the verb *to be*.^{*}—See page 40.

2. A noun is always understood, when not expressed, after Adjectives and Indefinite Pronouns: such as, *few, many, this, that, all, each, every, either*.—See page 147, under *They, those*.

No. *n*.

1. While I am reading you should be listening to what I read¹. He was delivering his speech when I left the house². They have been hearing a lecture on botany³. He might have been preparing his lesson⁴. I have been writing a letter, and I am just going to send it away⁵. She was walking by herself when I met her⁶. We are perishing with hunger; I am willing therefore to surrender⁷. We should always be learning⁸. A good man is always studying to be better⁹. We were playing at cricket yesterday¹⁰.

2. Those *only* are truly great who are really good¹¹. Few set a proper value on their time¹². Those who⁶ despise the admonitions of their friends, deserve the mischiefs which^a their own obstinacy brings upon them¹³. Of the many who contended for the prize, most were quite undeserving of it, and only a few made a tolerable appearance, though each expected to be the successful competitor¹⁴. Love no interests but those of truth and virtue¹⁵.

whose friendship is shown in the time of our adversity¹⁵.

* *Learned* here, is an *adjective*; and should be pronounced *learn-ed* in two syllables; but when a *verb*, in *one*.

† Concerning *that*, see Notes p. 19, and Key. No. 90, s. 48.

ship would be
crew lost, if
in time²⁷. T
joined; a hol
the thermome
when the mer
not show us c

E

EXERCISES.

The *Passive* or *Complete Participle* has uniformly either a relative or a personal pronoun, with some part of the verb to be, understood before it.*

No. 0.

Make the study of the sacred Scriptures² your daily concern; and embrace the doctrines (*which are*) contained in them, as the real oracles of Heaven, and the dictates of that Spirit that cannot lie¹. Knowledge softened with modesty and good breeding, will make a man beloved and admired². Gratitude and thanks are the least returns which children can make to their parents for the numberless obligations conferred on them³. Precepts have little influence when not enforced by example⁴. He is of all human beings the happiest, who has a conscience untainted† by guilt, and a mind so well regulated† as to be able to accommodate itself to whatever the wisdom of Heaven shall think fit to ordain⁵. Mere external beauty is of little estimation; and deformity, when associated with amiable dispositions and useful qualities, does not preclude our respect and approbation⁶. True honour, as defined by C.

On the Pas

An elevate
appears like
he remits his
nitude; and
less⁹. Econ
conducted, is
and is, in a
the exercise o

The lovely
And fortun
For, in her
Of every s
She, with h
And poor,
Among the
By solitude
But more b

We find m
has by no m
that happen¹²
Britain is sa
country which

and have been swamped, and the whole
st, if the leak had not been discovered
27. These two things cannot be dis-
a holy life and a happy death²⁸. As
mometer cannot indicate temperature,
e mercury is frozen ; so conscience can-
w us our duty, when hardened by sin²⁹.

EXERCISES.

75

EXERCISES,

the *Passive* or *Complete Participle*,—*continued*.

No. *b*.

levated genius, employed in little things,
s like the sun in his evening declination ;
its his splendour, but retains his mag-
; and pleases more, though he dazzles
Economy, prudently and temperately
ted, is the safeguard of many virtues ;
in a particular manner, favourable to
rcise of benevolence¹⁰.

lovely young Lavinia once had friends,
l fortune smiled deceitful² on her birth ;
in her helpless years, deprived of all,
every stay, save* innocence and Heaven,
with her widow'd mother, feeble, old,
l poor, lived in a cottage, far retired
ong the windings of a woody vale ;
solitude and deep surrounding shades,
more by bashful modesty concealed¹¹.

find man² placed † in a world where he
no means the disposal of the events
ppen¹². Protected by its floating walls,
is safer from invasion than many a
which has its whole frontier barricaded
regnable fortresses. Children often

of the Lord.
See Note, next page.

say—stop! Them did he make to pay tribute.
† Sent. 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, and 26, have no Imperative in them.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISES.

1. The objective after a *transitive* verb, especially when a relative, is often understood.
2. Sometimes the antecedent is omitted, and then it must in parsing be supplied.

No. 9.

1. He that moderates his desires, enjoys the best happiness this world can afford¹. Few reflections are more distressing than those we make on our own ingratitude². The modest flower we overlook is often more fragrant than the flaunting one we admire³. It is not easy to love those we do not esteem⁴. Our good or bad fortune depends on the choice we make of our friends⁵. Over-anxiety to avoid the evils we dread only makes us a broader mark for their sharp arrows; and not a few of our misfortunes are brought on, or at least accelerated, by the very means we use to avert them⁶. He eats regularly, drinks moderately, and reads often⁷. She sees and hears distinctly, but she cannot write⁸. Lay up a part of what you daily acquire, that you may have to give to him that is poor⁹.

2. There are in this loud stunning tide
Of human care and crime,
With whom the melodies abide
Of the everlasting chime¹⁰.

There have been that have delivered themselves from their misfortunes by their good conduct.

infinitive to be
what is under-
of error.

nor allow
our mind¹.
Others rise
of com-
e with all
rfeit their
selves re-
beggary².
ung³.

and;
race⁴.
5? Thy
an thou⁶.
I have
ent as his
10. How
ces were
one rich,
urple and
ne faring
siring to
the rich

EXERCISES.

1. The objective generally comes *after* the verb that governs it: but always when it is a *relative*, and often in other instances, it comes *before* it.

2. When two objectives follow a verb, the *thing* is governed by the *verb*, and the *person* by a *preposition* understood.

No. 1.

1. Me ye have bereaved of my children¹.
 Them that serve me faithfully I will reward².
 Mine* offence I trust you will forgive³. Him
 whom ye recommend I shall prefer⁴. Those
 that kindly reprov'd you, ye basely insulted⁵.
 Those who have laboured to make us wise and
 good, are the persons whom we ought particu-
 larly to love and respect⁶. Whom having not
 seen ye love⁷. Those curiosities we have im-
 ported from China; these from Japan⁸. The
 two letters I now give you are letters of intro-
 duction:—this you may send by post; that

EXERCISES.

1. The poets often use an *adjective* as a *noun*; and sometimes join an *adjective* to their new-made noun.
2. They sometimes improperly use an *adjective* for an *adverb*.
3. Though the adjective generally comes *before* the noun, it is sometimes placed *after* it.

No. 3.

1. And where He *vital* breathes there must be joy¹.
 — Who shall attempt with wandering feet
 The dark, unbottom'd, infinite abyss,
 And through the *palpable* OBSCURE find out
 His uncouth way, or spread his acry flight,
 Upborne with indefatigable wings,
 Over the *vast* ABRUPT, ere he arrive*
 The happy isle²?—*Paradise Lost*, b. ii. 404.
2. Thus Adam his illustrious guest besought:
 And thus the god-like angel answer'd *mild*³.
 The lovely young Lavinia once had friends,
 And fortune smiled *deceitful* on her birth⁴.
 When even it lost the

*A short Explanation of some of the Terms used
in the Grammar.*

- Abbreviation*, shortening.
Affirmative, yes, asserting.
Ambiguity, double meaning.
Annexed, joined to.
Antecedent, the word going before.
Auxiliary, helping.
Cardinal,* principal, or fundamental.
Comparative, a higher or lower degree of a quality.
Comparison, a comparing of qualities.
Conjugate, to give all the principal parts of a verb.
Contingency, what may or may not happen; casualty, accident.
Copulative, joining.
Defective, wanting some of its parts.
Demonstrative, pointing out.
Disjunctive, disjoining.
Distributive, dividing into portions.
Ellipsis, a leaving out of something.
Euphony, an agreeable sound.
Future, } time to come.
Futurity, }
Governs, rules or acts upon.
- Negative*, no, denying.
Nominative, naming.
Objective, applied to the case which follows an active verb or a preposition.
Obsolete, gone out of use.
Obsolescent, growing out of use.
Omit, to leave out, not to do.
Ordinal,† numbered in their order.
Paradigm, example.
Participle, partaking of other parts.
Past, the time past.
Perfect, completed, finished, past.
Personal, belonging to persons.
Pluperfect, more than perfect, quite finished some time ago.
Plurality, more than one.
Possessive, possessing, belonging to.
Positive, the quality without excess.
Preceding, going before.
Prefixing, placing before.
Present, the time that now is.
Promiscuous, mixed.

SYNT
con

A s
compl

Sen
compl

A s
and o

A c
simple
conjun
is long

A c
class

SYNTAX.

SYNTAX *treats of the proper arrangement and construction of words in sentences.**

A *sentence* is an assemblage of words making complete sense; as, *God made the world.*

Sentences are either simple; compound, or complex.

A *simple* sentence contains but one subject and one finite† verb; as, *Life is short.*

A *compound* sentence contains two or more simple sentences connected by a co-ordinative conjunction; as, *Time is short, BUT eternity is long.*

A *complex* sentence contains one principal

RULE I. *A verb must agree with its nominative in number and person ; as, Thou readest ; he reads ; we read.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

The birds sing sweetly.* Thou art the man. Of the metals platinum is the heaviest, gold the most prized, iron the most useful. The train of my ideas was interrupted. Almost thou persuaded me to be a Christian. In spring the ice melts and the fields become green. The number of pupils that attend our school has greatly increased since last session.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

I loves reading. I is going to London. A clear and approving conscience make an easy mind. There remains three things more to be considered. His conduct in public and private

RULE II. *A transitive verb governs the objective case; as, We love him; he loves us.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

* He enjoined me to tell the whole truth, and I obeyed him. If thou bring her to school, I will teach her and reward thee. Whom do you think I found in the garden? Me thou hast deceived by breaking the promise which thou madest.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He loves we. He and they we know, but who art thou? Let thou and I the battle try.

Esteeming † theirselves wise, they become fools. Upon seeing I he turned pale.

Who did you bring with you? They are the persons who ‡ we ought to respect.

§ Repenting him of his design he hastened him back. It will be very difficult to agree his





	PAGE
SYNTAX—continued.	
Miscellaneous Observations,	143
Use of Capitals,	155
Formal Modes of Addressing Persons of Title, etc.,	156
Punctuation,	159
Abbreviations,	166
PROSODY,	167
Versification,	167
Iambic Measure,	168
Trochaic Measure,	169
Anapaestic Measure,	170
FIGURES OF SPEECH,	171
FRENCH PHRASES,	176
LATIN PHRASES,	178
ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES,	181
THE SIMPLE SENTENCE,	182
<i>The Parts of the Subject,—</i>	
The Nominative,	184
The Attribute,	185
<i>The Parts of the Predicate,—</i>	
The Verb,	187
The Complement,	187
The Adverbial,	189
Kinds of Phrases,	193
THE COMPLEX SENTENCE,	196
The Adjective Clause,	197
The Noun Clause,	200
The Adverbial Clause,	202
THE COMPOUND SENTENCE,	211
Contracted Sentences,	211
QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION,	217

INDEX TO THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

143
155

156
159
166

167
167
168
169
170

171
176
178

181
182

184
185

187
187
189
193
196
197
200
202
211
211
217

Nouns.		Page
Two or more nouns in the sing.,	85	
Two nouns disjoined, &c.,	ib.	
Collective noun,	89	
One noun qualifies another,	88	
Of a clause between them,	111	
Several nouns in the possessive,	88	
Singular nouns of diff. persons,	98	
A singular and a plural noun,	99	
A noun and its pron. improper,	100	

Pronouns.

Pronouns agree in gender, &c.,	95
<i>Each, every, either</i> , agree, &c.,	108
<i>That and this, former, latter</i> ,	109
Relative agrees with its antec.,	96
Relative <i>that</i> and <i>which</i> ,	ib.
Relative preceded by two antecedents of different persons,	97
Rel. should be placed nextant.,	ib.
<i>Who</i> after <i>than</i> ,	107
When a pronoun refers to two words of different persons,†	99
<i>Of whichever</i> , &c.,*	111

Verb.

A verb agrees with its nom.,	82
A transitive verb governs,	83
Intransitive verbs do not admit an objective after them,‡	ib.
Transitive verbs do not admit of a preposition after them,||	ib.
One verb governs another,	87
The infinitive is used as a nom.,	101
Verbs related in point of time,	110
The verb to be has the same case,	90

Verbal Abstract.

Verbal abstract in <i>ing</i> ,	98
A possessive pronoun before the verbal abstract,†	ib.
A noun before the verbal abstract,‡	ib.

Participle.		Page
Passive participle is used after <i>have</i> and <i>be</i> ,	94	

Adverbs.

Of the position of adverbs,	104
Adjectives not used as adverbs,	105
Of <i>hence, thence, there</i> ,	ib.
Double comparatives improper,	102
Two negatives improper,	103
The com. degree requires <i>than</i> ,	106

Prepositions.


Prepositions govern objective,	84
— sometimes a phrase,‡	ib.
— should be placed before the relative,*	ib.
Diff. preps. with the same noun,†	ib.
<i>To, at, in</i> , before names of places,	112
Words requiring appropriate prepositions,	118

Conjunctions.

Conjunctions couple like moods,	86
— require subjunctive mood,	91
<i>Lest</i> and <i>that</i> ,	ib.
<i>If</i> , with <i>but</i> following,†	ib.
Conjunctions in pairs,	92
— <i>than</i> and <i>as</i> ,	107

Various Things.

Interjections,‡	112
General Rule,	116
Use of the articles,	117
Ellipsis is frequently admitted,	118
— improper,	119
Construction,	120
Promiscuous exer. on Syntax,	121
Miscellaneous observations,	143
When to use capitals,	155
Prosody,	167
Of Versification,	ib.
Figures of Speech,	171
French and Latin Phrases,	176
Questions for Examination,	217

 *The Exercises on Syntax should be written in their corrected state with a stroke drawn under the word corrected. K. means Key; the figures refer to the No. of the Key, not the page.*

E
w
r
F
O
it
d
w
n
w
an
d
in
I
an
ou
sin

THE PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing the English Language with propriety.

It is divided into four parts; namely, *Orthography*, *Etymology*, *Syntax* (with *Analysis*), and *Prosody*.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHY *treats of Letters, Syllables, and the spelling of Words.*

THERE are *twenty-six* letters in English.

Letters are either Vowels or Consonants.

A *Vowel* is a letter that can be sounded by itself.

A *Consonant* is a letter that cannot be sounded distinctly unless when it is joined with a vowel.

The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*, and sometimes *w* and *y*.

The Consonants are *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z*.

W and *y* are consonants when they begin a word or a syllable; in every other position they are vowels.

A *Diphthong* is the union of two vowels in a double sound; as, *ei* in *height*; *eu* in *feud*; *oi* in *boil*, and *ou* in *foul*.

OBSERVATIONS.

Note that *i* in *night* sounds *ei*; *u* in *duty*, *eu* in *beauty*, *iew* in *view*, and *ew* in *new*, sound *eu*; *oy* in *boy* sounds *oi*; and *ow* in *now* sounds *ou*. Note, also, that *oa* in *boat*, *ea* in *meat*, *ai* in *rain*, *ou* in *four*, are single sounds, and not true Diphthongs.

A *Syllable* is as much of a word as can be sounded at once; as, *gram* in *grammar*.

A *Monosyllable* is a word of *one* syllable; as, *house*.

A *Dissyllable* is a word of *two* syllables; as, *household*.

A *Trisyllable* is a word of *three* syllables; as, *householder*.

A *Polysyllable* is a word of *many* syllables.

Spelling is the art of expressing words by their proper letters.

EXERCISES ON ORTHOGRAPHY.

Tell the Vowels in

Ball, cellar, dine, folly, home, James, kitchen, lambkin, mulberry, popgun.

Tell whether w and y are Vowels or Consonants in

Awry, beware, blowy, downy, fowl, grayling, hay, jewry, lawfully, wayward, witty, yearly.

Tell which are true Diphthongs in

Boil, cook, death, faith, gown, hawk, loud, mean, pour, queen, roar, toy.

Tell how many Syllables are in the following words:—

Aaron, barbarian, circular, diamond, extraordinary, firefly, goatherd, heavenward, Laodicea, latitudinarian, noteworthy, Utopia.

OBSERVATIONS.

In every syllable there must be at least one vowel.
Any vowel except *w* can make a syllable by itself.

ETYMOLOGY.

ETYMOLOGY treats of the different sorts of Words, their various modifications, and their derivation.

THERE are eight parts of Speech;—Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

The Noun.

A *Noun* is the name of any person, animal, place, thing, or quality; as, *John, horse, London, book, pain.*

There are three kinds of Nouns, *Proper, Common,* and *Abstract.*

Proper Nouns are the names of individuals only; as, *James, Edinburgh, Ben Lomond.*

Common Nouns name a whole kind or class; as, *boy, city, mountain.* A *Common Noun* signifying a number of individuals is called a *Collective Noun*; as, *class, crowd, army.*

Abstract Nouns are the names of qualities and actions; as, *whiteness, wisdom, building.*

EXERCISES ON NOUNS.

Tell which of the following words are Nouns, and whether the Nouns are *Proper, Common,* or *Abstract* :—

The boys are at school. John has been sent by his father to London. Stirling is a town on the river Forth. The Alps are the highest mountains in Europe. My cousin has a ship called the Rover; it carries passengers and goods between Liverpool and New York. Virtue is its own reward. The sun never sets on the empire of Queen Victoria.

Nouns are varied by Number, Gender, and Case.

OBSERVATION.

Proper nouns have the plural only when they refer to a race or family; as, *The Campbells*; or to several persons of the same name; as, *The eight Henrys*; the two *Miss Browns.*

Of NUMBER.

Nouns have *two numbers*; the *Singular* and the *Plural*. The singular denotes *one*, the plural *more than one*.

The plural is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, Book, books.

To this general rule there are many exceptions:—

1. Nouns ending in an *s* sound (*ss, sh, ch* soft, *x*), and in *i* and *o* preceded by a consonant, form the plural by adding *es*; as, Miss, misses; brush, brushes; church, churches; fox, foxes; alkali, alkalies; hero, heroes.

Ch hard, and *o* preceded by a vowel, take *s* only; as, Stomach, stomachs; folio, folios.

2. Nouns in *y* preceded by a consonant change *y* into *ie* before adding the *s* for the plural; as, Lady, ladies; but *y* preceded by a vowel follows the general rule; as, Day, days.

3. Nouns in *f* or *fe*, change *f* or *fe* into *ve* before adding *s* for the plural; as, Loaf, loaves; life, lives.

The following words follow the general rule, viz.—Brief, chief, fief, grief, handkerchief; hoof, proof, reproof, roof; dwarf, scarf, wharf; gulf; turf; cliff, sheriff, skiff, whiff; cuff, muff, puff, ruff, snuff, stuff; fife, strife; safe.

4. Some nouns, including all that end in *man*, take the Saxon *en* in the plural; as,

Ox	oxen	Footman	footmen
Child	children	Seaman	seamen
Man	men	Statesman	statesmen
Alderman	aldermen	Woman	women
Englishman	Englishmen	Workman	workmen

5. Nouns which have two meanings have sometimes two forms of the plural. Thus:—

Brother has *brothers* in the plural to denote sons of the same parent, and *brethren* to denote members of the same society; *Die*, a stamp for coining, has *dies*; *die*, a little cube used in games, *dice*; *Genius* has *geniuses* when signifying persons of genius, *genii* when denoting aerial beings; *Index* has *indexes* when it means a table of contents, and *indices* when it denotes the exponent of an algebraic quantity; *Pea* has *peas* for single seeds, and *pease* for seeds in the mass; *Penny* has *pennies* when penny-pieces are intended, but *pence* when mere value is denoted.

6. A few nouns of Saxon origin form the plural by vowel change. Thus:—

Foot	feet	Louse	lice	Cow	kine
Goose	geese	Mouse	mice	Tooth	teeth

7. A few nouns are used alike in both numbers; as, *Deer*, *sheep*, *swine*; the singular being distinguished from the plural by the article *a*; as, *A deer*, *a sheep*, *a swine*.

EXERCISES ON NUMBER.

Write,—or tell,—or spell, the Plural of

Fox,* book, leaf, candle, hat, loaf, wish, fish, sex, kiss, coach, inch, sky, army, duty, knife, echo, loss, cargo, wife, story, church, table, glass, study, calf, branch, street, potato, peach, sheaf, booby, rock, stone, house, hope, flower, city, difficulty, distress.

Day, boy, relay, chimney, journey, valley, needle, enemy, an army, a vale, an ant, a sheep, the hills, a valley, the sea, key, toy.

Monarch, tyro, grotto, nuncio, punctilio, ruff, muff, reproof, portico, handkerchief, gulf, hoof, fife, multitude, people, meeting, John, Lucy.

OBSERVATIONS.

Nouns which have been adopted without change from foreign languages generally retain their original plurals. Thus:—

From the Greek.

Antithesis	antitheses	Hypóthesis	hypótheses
Autómaton	autómata	Métamorphosis	métamorphoses
Básis	báses	Miásmata	miásmata
Crisis	crises	Phásis	pháses
Crítérion	crítéria	Phenómenon	phenómena
Ellipsis	ellipses	Thésis	théses

* What is the plural of *fox*? *Foxes*. Why? Because nouns in *ss*, *sh*, *ch*, *soft s*, *t*, or *o*, form the plural, by adding *es*.—What is the plural of *book*? *Books*. Why? Because the plural is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular.—What is the plural of *leaf*? *Leaves*. Why? Because nouns in *f* or *fe* change *f* or *fe* into *ves* in the plural.—What is the plural of *army*? *Armies*. Why? Because nouns in *y*, preceded by a consonant, change *y* into *ies* in the plural.—What is the plural of *day*? *Days*. Spell it; *d, a, y, s*. Why not *d, a, t, e, s*? Because *y* with a vowel before it is not changed into *ies*: it takes *s* only.—What is the difference between *adding* and *changing*?—K. No. 87, 40, 41.

<i>From the Latin.</i>			
Addendum	addenda	Ignis-fátuus	ignes-fátui
Animálculum	animálcula	Lámína	lámíne
Apex	apices	Larva	larvæ
Appendix	appendices	Mágus	mági
Arcánnum	arcána	Medium	media
Axis	axes	Memorandum	memoranda
Calx	calces	Moméntum	moménta
Dátum	dáta	Nébula	nébule
Desiderátum	desideráta	Oasis	oases
Dictum	dicta	Rádíus	rádii
Effúvium	effúvia	Stímulus	stímuli
Errátum	erráta	Strátum	stráta
Fócus	fóci	Terminus	termini
Fungus	fungi	Vertex	vértices
Génus	généra	Vortex	vortices
<i>From the Hebrew.</i>			
Cherub	cherubim	Séraph	séraphim
<i>From the French.</i>			
Beau	beaux	Monsieur	messieurs
<i>From the Italian.</i>			
Bandit	} banditti	Conversazione	conversazioni
Banditto		Dilettante	dilettanti
Cognoscente	cognoscenti	Virtuoso	virtuosi

Proper names have necessarily no plural. But there are also common nouns which want the plural; among which the chief are—

Names of metals; as, Iron, gold: Names of grains; as, Rye, wheat: Names of liquids; as, Beer, wine: Names of arts and sciences; as, Music, astronomy: and names of abstract and moral qualities; as, Warmth, meekness.

It is only when the names of metals, grains, liquids, &c., express varieties of the substances denoted by them that they take a plural; as, French *wines*, Manchester *cottons*.

There are some common nouns, on the other hand, which have no singular; such as nouns descriptive of objects which have a plurality of parts, or which nature or art has made double. The following are examples:—

Annals	Compasses	Nuptials	Tidings
Archives	Drawers	Oats	Tongs
Ashes	Entrails	Pincers	Trousers
Bellows	Folk	Riches	Vespers
Billiards	Lungs	Scissors	Victuals
Bowls	Measles	Snuffers	Vitals
Breeches	Morals	Thanks	Wages

Amis, news, odds, pains, are generally used in the singular number.

The names of sciences ending in *ics*, as *Ethics, mathematics, politics, &c.*, admit of being used in either number, according as they are conceived to express unity or plurality.

Horse and foot, meaning *cavalry and infantry*, are used in the singular form with a plural verb.

Of GENDER.

There are *three genders*; the *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

The *Masculine* denotes the *male sex*; as, *A man, a boy*.

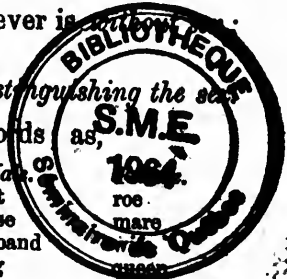
The *Feminine* denotes the *female sex*; as, *A woman, a girl*.

The *Neuter* denotes whatever is *neither male nor female*; as, *Milk*.

There are three ways of distinguishing the sex

1. By different words

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>
Bachelor	maid, spinster	Hart	roe
Beau	belle	Horse	mare
Boar	sow	Husband	queen
Boy	girl	King	lady
Bridegroom	bride	Lord	woman
Brother	sister	Man	mistress
Buck	doe	Master	spawner
Bull	cow	Militer	nun
Bullock	} heifer, — <i>heifer</i>	Monk	niece
Ox or steer		hen	Nephew	ewe
Cock	filly	Ram	} songstress or singer
Colt	bitch	Singer		madam
Dog	duck	Sir	alut
Drake	countess	Sloven	daughter
Earl	mother	Son	hind
Father	gammer	Stag	aunt
Gaffer	goose	Uncle	witch
Gander	lady	Wizard	
Gentleman			



OBSERVATIONS.

NEUTER means *neither*, and therefore intimates that the nouns so called are neither masculine nor feminine.

Some nouns are either *masculine* or *feminine*, and are said to be of the *common gender*; such as, *Parent, child, cousin, infant, servant, neighbour, &c.*

Some nouns, naturally neuter, become, when personified, either *masculine* or *feminine*: as, when we say of the sun, *He is setting*; and of the moon, *She is eclipsed*.

2. By a difference of termination ; as,

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>
Author	authoress	Mayor	mayoress
Báron	bároness	Pátron	pátroness
Count	countess	Peer	peeress
Dauphin	dauphiness	Poet	poetess
Deacon	deaconess	Priest	priestess
Giant	giantess	Prince	princess
Heir	heiress	Prior	prioress
Höst	höstess	Prophet	prophetess
Jew	Jewess	Shepherd	shepherdess
Lion	lioness	Viscount	viscountess
Abbot	abbess	Marquis	marchioness
Actor	actress	Master	mistress
Adulterer	adulteress	Protector	protectress
Benefactor	benefactress	Seamster	seamstress
Duke	duchess	Songster	songstress
Emperor	empress	Sorcerer	sorceress
Hunter	huntress	Tiger	tigress
Lad	lass	Traitor	traitress
Administrátor	administrátrix	Heritor	heretrix
Exécutor	exécutrix	Testator	testatrix
Czar	czarina	Landgrave	landgravine
Héro	hër-o-ïne	Margrave	margravine
Infant	infanta	Sultan	sultana
Widower	widow	Bridegroom	bride

3. By prefixing another word ; as,

Cock-sparrow	hen-sparrow	Male-child	female-child
He-goat	she-goat	Man-servant	maid-servant

EXERCISES ON GENDER.

Tell the Gender of

Child, egg, father, garden, girl, horse, house-
maid, inkbottle, kinsfolk, lamb, mankind, navy,
Peter, Russia, ship, sovereign, star.

Name and spell the words opposite in Gender to

Abbot, bride, duke, earl, empress, goose, hero,
lady, landgrave, madam, milkmaid, moorcock,
peahen, ram, roe, steer, widow.

Of CASE.

Nouns have *three cases*; the *Nominative*, *Possessive*, and *Objective*.

The *Nominative* and the *Objective* are *alike*.

The *Possessive* is formed by adding an *apostrophē* and *s* to the *Nominative*; as, *Jōb's*.

When the plural ends in *s*, the *possessive* is formed by adding only an *apostrophe*: thus,

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Man	Men	|	Lady	Ladies
<i>Poss.</i>	Man's	Men's	|	Lady's	Ladies'
<i>Obj.</i>	Man	Men	|	Lady	Ladies

EXERCISES ON CASE.

Tell the *Cases* (and also the *number* and *gender*) of the following *Nouns*:—

* *Father*, *brothers*, *mother's*, *boys*, *book*, *loaf*, *wife*, *sisters'*, *bride's*, *the horse's hoof*, *John's boots*, *eagles' wings*, *a girls' school*.

Tell the *possessive* of

Charles, *child*, *children*, *duchess*, *father*, *fathers*, *footman*, *leaf*, *leaves*, *life*, *mistress*, *negro*, *negroes*, *owner*, *owners*, *postchaise*, *prince*, *princess*, *princesses*.

OBSERVATIONS.

Case denotes the relation which a *noun* bears to any other word with which it is connected.

The *Nominative* denotes the *subject* of a sentence.

The *Possessive* denotes *possession*; as, *Ann's book*.—*Possession* is often expressed by *of* as well as by *'s*.—K. 57 to 63, also 194 and 195. The *'s* is a contraction of *-as* and *-es* in Old English.

The *Objective* denotes the *object* on which an action terminates.

* One method of using the above exercises is as follows:

Father, a *noun*, *singular* (number), *masculine* (gender), the *nominative* (case), plural, *fathers*. *Brothers*, a *noun*, *plural*, *masculine*, the *nominative*. *Mother's*, a *noun*, *singular*, *feminine*, the *possessive*. Spell it. K. 44.

By parsing in this manner, the pupil gives a correct answer to the questions, *What part of speech is father? What number? What gender? What case?* without obliging the teacher to lose time to no purpose in asking them. The pupil, however, should be made to understand that he is giving answers to questions which are always supposed to be asked.

As the *Nominative* and *Objective* are alike, no inaccuracy can result from the pupil's being allowed to call it always the *nominative*, till he come to the verb. *Case* may be altogether omitted till that time, the cases of pronouns excepted.—See *Notes*, page 86.

The Adjective.

An *Adjective* is a word joined to a noun to express *quality* or *number*, or to point out a thing spoken of; as, *A good boy*; *ten books*; *the moon*.

EXERCISES ON ADJECTIVES.

Point out the Nouns and Adjectives in the following phrases:—

A good scholar, a bright sky, deeds unjust and cruel, a sharp knife, an old hat and a new coat, wintry weather, dreary winter.

Prefix appropriate Adjectives to the following Nouns:—

Boy, castle, desk, fig, ghost, grapes, highway, island, lily, memory, navy, passenger.

The Adjectives *an* or *a* and *the* are sometimes called Articles. *An* is used before a vowel or *h* silent; as, *an age, an hour*. *A* is used before a consonant; as, *a day*.

An or *a* is called the *Indefinite Article*; *the* is called the *Definite Article*.

EXERCISES ON THE ARTICLES.

Prefix the indefinite article to the following words:—

Army, ass, boot, coat, door, elm, eye, river, garden, hair, heir, island, nation, orange.

Correct the following errors:—

A errer, an hen, an hill, a hour, a inkstand, an hand, an ewe, an useful book, an history.

OBSERVATIONS.

A is used before the long sound of *a* and before *w* and *y*; as, *A wait, a woe, a week, a year*.

A is used before nouns in the *singular* number only.—It is used before the plural in nouns preceded by such phrases as *A few, a great many*; as, *a few books*; *a great many apples*. *The* is used before nouns in both numbers; as, *The man, the men*.

OF COMPARISON. X

Adjectives have *three* degrees of comparison; the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

The *Positive* expresses the *simple* quality—as, *Wise*; the *Comparative* a *higher* or *lower* degree of the quality—as, *Wiser*, *less wise*; and the *Superlative* the *highest* or *lowest* degree—as, *Wisest*, *least wise*.—K. 68, 72.

The *Comparative* is used in comparing two things, and is formed by adding *r* or *er* to the positive; as, *Wise*, *wiser*; *sweet*, *sweeter*.

The *Superlative* is used in comparing more than two things, and is formed by adding *st* or *est*; as, *Wise*, *wisest*; *sweet*, *sweetest*.—K. 67.

Adjectives of *more* than one syllable are generally compared by prefixing *more* and *most*; as, *More* numerous, *most* numerous; or by *less* and *least*; as, *Less* merry, *least* merry.

When the positive ends in a single consonant, preceded by a single vowel, the consonant is doubled before *er* and *est*; as, *Sad*, *sadder*, *saddest*.

When the positive ends in *y*, preceded by a consonant, the *y* is changed into *i* before *er* and *est*; as, *Happy*, *happier*, *happiest*.

OBSERVATIONS.

Some adjectives are compared by adding *most* to the comparative; as, *upper*, *uppermost*; *lower*, *lowermost*; *nether*, *nethermost*.

Nouns are often used as adjectives; as, A *gold* ring, a *silver* cup.—Adjectives often become nouns; as, *Much* good.

Some adjectives do not properly admit of comparison; such as, *True*, *perfect*, *universal*, *chief*, *extreme*.

Elder and *eldest* are applied to persons; *older* and *oldest* to things.

The following Adjectives are compared irregularly :—

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Bad, evil, or ill	worse	worst
Down	—	downmost
Far	farther	farthest
Fore	former	foremost or first
Good	better	best
In	inner	inmost or innermost
Late	later or latter	latest or last
Little	less	least
Many or much	more	most
Near	nearer	nearest or next
Nigh	nigher	nighest or next
Old	older or elder	oldest or eldest
Out	outer or utter	utmost or utmost
Up	upper	upmost or uppermost

EXERCISES ON COMPARISON.

Tell the degree of comparison of each Adjective :—

Less, most, richer, most extravagant, more, deepest, near, first, more dangerous, painful, next.

Compare the following Adjectives and give the spelling :—

Able, beautiful, crafty, gay, glad, hardy, little, manly, many, precious, red, severe, testy, worthy, zealous.

Point out the Adjectives which cannot be compared :—

Eternal, external, extreme, holy, human, ill, large, matchless, perpendicular, right, square, supreme, unchangeable, wooden, yearly.

OBSERVATIONS.

Later is the opposite of *sooner*, or *earlier*; *latter*, of *former*; *latest*, of *soonest*, or *earliest*; *last*, of *first*.

Many refers to number, *much* to quantity; *more* and *most* to either number or quantity.

Down and *up* are used as adjectives in such phrases as the *down* and the *up* train.

The Pronoun.

A *Pronoun* is a word used instead of a noun ; as, *John* is a good boy ; *he* obeys the master.

There are *four* kinds of pronouns ; *Personal*, *Demonstrative*, *Indefinite*, and *Relative*.

Of PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The *Personal* Pronouns are *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, *it*.

They have number, gender, and case, and are thus declined:—

Person.	Gender.	Case.	Singular.	Plural.
First,	Mas. or Fem.	Nom.	I	We
		Poss.	My or mine	Our or ours
		Obj.	Me	Us
Second,	Mas. or Fem.	Nom.	Thou	Ye or you
		Poss.	Thy or thine	Your or yours
		Obj.	Thee	You
Third,	Mas.	Nom.	He	They
		Poss.	His	Their or theirs
		Obj.	Him	Them
Third,	Fem.	Nom.	She	They
		Poss.	Her or hers	Their or theirs
		Obj.	Her	Them
Third,	Neut.	Nom.	It	They
		Poss.	Its	Their or theirs
		Obj.	It	Them

EXERCISES ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

I, *thou*, *we*, *me*, *us*, *thine*, *he*, *him*, *she*, *hers*, *they*, *thee*, *them*, *its*, *theirs*, *you*, *her*, *ours*, *yours*, *mine*, *his*, *I*, *me*, *them*, *us*, *it*, *we*.

OBSERVATIONS.

Hers, *its*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, should never be written, *her's*, *it's*, *our's*, *your's*, *their's* ; but *hers*, *its*, *ours*, &c.

The compound personal pronouns, *Myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, &c., when objectives are called *Reflectives* pronouns. When joined to a noun or another pronoun, they are *emphatic* ; as, *I myself*. — See K. 80, 96.

These pronouns are generally in the same case with the noun or pronoun to which they are joined ; as, "*She herself* said so ;" "*They themselves* acknowledged it to me myself ;" "*The master himself* got it."

Self, when used alone, is a noun ; as, "*Our fondness for self* is hurtful to others." — K. 96.

Of the two forms of the possessive case, the forms *My*, *thy*, *her*, *our*, *your*, *their*, are used before a noun ; the forms *Mine*, *thine*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, when no noun follows ; *His* and *its* in either case.

Mine and *thine* are sometimes used before a vowel or a silent *s* ; as, *Mine iniquities*, *thine eye*, *mine hour*.

Of RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

A *Relative Pronoun*, besides standing for a noun or a pronoun preceding it, also introduces a dependent clause; as, I have lost the book *which* you gave me.

The preceding noun or pronoun is called the antecedent.

The simple relatives are *who*, *which*, *that*, and *as*.

Who and *which* are either singular or plural.

Who has a possessive, *whose*, and an objective, *whom*.

Who is applied to persons; as, The boy *who*.

Which is applied to inferior animals, and things without life; as, The dog *which* barks; the book *which* was lost.

That is applied to persons, animals, or things; as, The boy *that* reads; the book *that* was lost.

As, as a relative, is preceded by *such*; as, He is not *such* a fool *as* he looks.

What is a compound relative, including both the relative and the antecedent; as, This is *what* I wanted; that is, *the thing which* I wanted.

OBSERVATIONS.

In asking questions, *Who*, *which*, and *what*, are called *interrogatives*; as, *Who* said that? *What* did he do?—K. p. 84. *Note*.

The *Relative* is always of the *same gender, number, and person*, as its antecedent, but not always in the *same case*.—K. p. 43. b.†

The *Relative* sometimes refers to a *whole clause* as its antecedent; as, The Bill was rejected by the Lords, *which* excited no small degree of jealousy and discontent; that is, *which thing, or circumstance, excited, &c.*

Who is applied to inferior animals, when they are represented as speaking and acting like *rational beings*.—K. p. 43.* b.

What and *which* are sometimes used as *adjectives*; as, "I know not by what fatality the adversaries of the motion are impelled;" *which* things are an allegory. *Which* here is equal to *these*.—Page 66, b.

Whoever, *whosoever*, and *whoso*, are compound relatives equal to *He who*; or, *The person that*.—K. 88, 89.

Of DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Demonstrative Pronouns are, *this*, plural *these*, and *that*, plural *those*, and *yon*. They are really demonstrative adjectives used elliptically. Thus, *This* is a beautiful day, means, *this* day is a beautiful one; *that* is a grand book, means, *that* book is a grand one; *yon* is a splendid picture, means, *yon* picture is a splendid one.

OBSERVATIONS.

This, *that*, *these*, *those*, and *yon* are adjectives when they are followed by a noun. When they are not followed by a noun they are pronouns.

That is sometimes a Demonstrative pronoun, sometimes a Relative pronoun, and sometimes a Conjunction.—K. 90.

Of INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The Indefinite Pronouns are, *one*, *none*, *these*, *some*, *such*, *both*, *yon*, *other*, *another*, *each*, *either*, *neither*, and *everyone*.

Most of these pronouns are adjectives used elliptically. Thus, *Each* of the men lost a son, means, *each man* of the men lost a son.

Each, *either*, *neither*, and *everyone* are also called *Distributive* Pronouns.

OBSERVATIONS.

None means not one, and was formerly used as a singular; as, *None* but the brave *deserves* the fair; but it is now generally used as a plural; as, *None* are so blind as *those* that won't see.

One should not be followed by *his* or *hers*, but by *one's*. We should say, *One* likes to entertain *one's* friends, not *his* friends.

EXERCISES ON PRONOUNS.

Point out the Pronouns, and tell for what Nouns they are used:—

You are hungry, and I am thirsty. Mary lost her cap, but the maid found it and brought it to her. The soldiers told their officers that they had done as they had ordered them.

What kind of a Pronoun is

Mine, that, what, whosoever, her, every, both, these, another, whose, either, any, all, none, each, as, themselves, myself? *

Tell the person, number, gender, and case of

She, its, our, them, us, hers, they, thine, thou, me, ye, you, thee, your, theirs, it, him, her.

Point out the Relatives and their antecedents:—

The rain which fell last night. A man whose name is Smith. The book that you sent me was lost by the boy who carried it. The person with the white hat, whom you met yesterday, was the master of the ship that went down in the bay.

Put the Relative who, or which, instead of that:—

The dog that you bought is dead. The maid that he hired is from Wales. The horse that I bought at the fair was much admired by all that saw it there.

Is that a Relative or a Demonstrative in the following sentences:—

I abhor the tongue that flatters. That is a moss rose. The book that you gave me is lost. His portrait is better than that of his wife. My plan is better than that which you propose.

* The personal pronouns, *Himself, herself, themselves, &c.*, are used in the nominative case as well as in the objective; as, *Himself* shall come.

The Verb.

A *Verb* is a word that tells or asserts. It expresses *being, acting, or being acted upon*; as, *I am, I love, I am loved.*

Verbs are of three kinds, *Transitive, Intransitive, and Neuter.*

A *Transitive* verb expresses action passing from an *actor* to an *object*; as, James *strikes* the table.

An *Intransitive* verb expresses action that does not pass to an object; as, The horse *runs.*

A *Neuter* verb expresses *being, or a state or condition*; as, *I am, he sleeps.*

Certain verbs are called *Auxiliary Verbs*, because they are combined with principal verbs to indicate voice, mood, or tense. They are *Be, have, shall, and will.*

Verbs are inflected, to express *Number, Person, Mood, Tense or Time, and Voice.*

Verbs have *two* Numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*; as, *He is, they are.*

Verbs have *three* Persons; as, *I love, thou lovest, he loves.*

OBSERVATIONS.

Neuter, when applied to verbs, intimates that they are neither transitive nor intransitive.

Verbs that are used only in the 3d pers. sing. are called *impersonal, or unpersonal*; as, *it rains, it snows.*

Of MOOD.

Verbs have *five* moods; the Indicative, the Subjunctive, the Imperative, the Infinitive, and the Participial.

The *Indicative* mood makes an assertion directly; as, *He loves*; he is *loved*; or it asks a question; as, *Lovest* thou me?

The *Subjunctive* mood makes an assertion in the form of a condition or supposition, and is preceded by a conjunction, expressed or understood, and followed by a principal verb; as, If you *wish* prosperity, *deserve* it.

The *Imperative* mood commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *Do* this; *deal* honestly; *deliver* my soul.

The *Infinitive* mood expresses the meaning of the verb in the form of a noun; as, He taught me *to write*; John loves *reading* (to read) poetry. The infinitive in *ing* is also called the *Gerund*.

The *Participial* mood expresses the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective; as, A *loving* friend; John is *writing* (a *writing* person); the letter is *written* (a *written* thing).

Writing is called the active or incomplete participle,* and *written*, the passive or complete participle.

Of TENSE, or TIME.

Verbs have *six* tenses, the Present, the Past, the Perfect, the Pluperfect, the Future, and the Future Perfect.

* The participle differs from an adjective in having the power to govern a noun or a pronoun in the objective case; as, The man *carrying* the flag is a Welshman.

The *Present* tense expresses what is going on just now; as, I *love* you; I *strike* the table.

The *Past* tense represents the action or event either as past or finished; as, He *broke* the bottle, and the brandy was spilt.

The *Perfect* tense implies that the action or event has just now been finished; as, John *has cut* his finger; my horse *has run* off.

The *Pluperfect* tense represents a thing as *past* before another event happened; as, All the judges *had taken* their places *before* Sir Roger came.

The *Future* represents the action as yet to come; as, He *will* return next week, and you *shall* see him.

The *Future Perfect* intimates that the action will be fully accomplished at or before the time of another future action or event; as, I *shall have* learned my lesson *before* ten o'clock.

Of VOICE.

Verbs have *two* voices, the *Active* voice and the *Passive* voice.

The *Active* voice asserts the *doing* of the action, and has the doer or agent as its subject; as, James *struck* the table. Ten horses *ran*.

The *Passive* voice asserts the *receiving* or *suffering* of the action, and has the receiver as its subject; as, The table *was struck* by James.

The *Passive* voice is formed by combining the verb *to be* with the passive participle of the principal verb.

An *Intransitive* verb has no *Passive* voice.

Remarks on some of the Tenses.

ON THE PRESENT.

1. The *Present tense* is used to express a *habit* or *custom*; as, He *snuffs*; She *goes* to church. It is sometimes applied to persons long since dead, when the narration of their actions excites our passions; as, "Nero *is* abhorred for his cruelty." "Milton *is* admired for his sublimity."

2. In historical narration, it is beautifully used for the *Past tense*; as, "Cæsar *leaves* Gaul, *crosses* the Rubicon, and *enters* Italy with five thousand men."—It is sometimes used with fine effect for the *Perfect*; as, "In the book of Genesis, Moses *tells* us who were the descendants of Abraham,"—for *has told* us.

3. When preceded by such words as *when*, *before*, *as soon as*, *after*, it expresses the relative time of a *future* action; as, When he *comes*, he will be welcome—As soon as the post *arrives*, the letters will be delivered.

4. In the *progressive form*, or *form of continued action*, it expresses an action *begun* and *going on just now*, but not complete; as, I *am studying* my lesson. He *is writing* a letter.

ON THE PAST.

The *Past tense* is used when the action or state is *limited* by the *circumstance* of *time* or *place*; as, "We *saw* him *yesterday*." "We were in bed *when he arrived*." Here the words *yesterday* and *when* limit the action and state to a particular time.—After *death* all agents are spoken of in the *Past tense*, because time is limited or defined by the *life* of the person; as, "Mary Queen of Scots *was* remarkable for her beauty."

This tense is peculiarly appropriated to the *narrative style*; because all narration implies some *circumstance*; as, "Socrates *refused* to adore false gods." Here the period of Socrates's life, being a limited part of past time, circumscribes the narration.—It is improper, then, to say of one already dead, "He *has been* much admired: he *has done* much good:" but, "He *was* much admired; he *did* much good."

Although the Past tense is used when the action is *circumstantially* expressed by a word or sentiment that limits the time of the action to some definite portion of past time, yet such words as *often*, *sometimes*, *many a time*, *frequently*, and similar vague intimations of time, except in *narrations*, require the *perfect*, because they admit a certain latitude,

and do not limit the action to any *definite* portion of past time; thus, "How *often* have we *seen* the proud despised."

ON THE PERFECT.

The *Perfect tense* chiefly denotes the accomplishment of mere facts without any *necessary* relation to *time* or *place*, or any other circumstance of their existence; as, Philosophers have *endeavoured* to investigate the origin of evil. In general, however, it denotes,

1. An action newly finished; as, I *have heard* great news. The post *has arrived*, but he *has brought* no letters for you.

2. An action done in a *definite* space of time (such as a *day*, a *week*, a *year*), a part of which has yet to *elapse*; as, I *have spent* this day well.

3. An action perfected some time ago, but whose consequences extend to the present time; as, We *have neglected* our duty, and are therefore unhappy.

Duration or *existence* requires the *perfect*; as, He *has been* dead four days. We say, Cicero *has written* orations, because the orations are still in *existence*; but we cannot say, Cicero *has written* poems, because the poems do not exist; they are lost; therefore, we must say, "Cicero *wrote* poems."

The following are a few instances in which the *Perfect* is improperly used for the *Past*. "I have somewhere met with the epitaph of a charitable man, which *has* very much pleased me." Spect. No. 177. The latter part of this sentence is rather *narrative* than *assertive*; and therefore it should be—which very much *pleased* me, that is, *when I read* it.—"When that the poor *hath* cried, Cæsar *hath* wept." Shaksp. The style is here *narrative*; Cæsar was dead. It should therefore be, "When the poor *cried*, Cæsar *wept*."—"Though in old age, the circle of our pleasure is more contracted than it *has formerly been*; yet, &c." Blair, Serm. 12. It should be, "than it *formerly was*;" because in old age, the former stages of life, contrasted with the present, convey an idea, not of *completion*, but of *limitation*, and thus become a subject of *narration*, rather than of *assertion*. "I have known him, Eugenius, *when he has been* going to a play, or an opera, divert the money which was designed for that purpose, upon an object of charity whom he *has met with* in the street." Spect. No. 177. It should be; "When he *was* going," and "whom he *met with*

in the street;" because the actions are *circumstantially* related by the phrases, *when going to a play* and *in the street*.

ON THE FUTURE PERFECT.

Upon more careful reflection, it appears to me, that the Second Future should have *will* or *shall* in *all* the persons, as in the *first*. Mr Murray has excluded *will* from the *first* person, and *shall* from the *second* and *third*, because they appear to him to be incorrectly applied; and in the examples which he has adduced, they are incorrectly applied; but this is not a sufficient reason for excluding them altogether from every sentence. The fault is in the writer; he has applied them wrong, a thing that is often done with *will* and *shall* in the *first* future, as well as in the *second*.

If I am at liberty to use *will* in the first future, to intimate my *resolution* to perform a future action, as, "I *will* go to church, for I am *resolved* to go," why should I not employ *will* in the second future, to intimate my resolution or determination to have an action *finished* before a specified future time? Thus, "I *will* have written my letters before supper:" that is, I am *determined* to have my letters finished before supper. Were the truth of this affirmation, respecting the time of finishing the letters, called in question, the propriety of using *will* in the *first* person would be unquestionable. Thus, You will not have finished your letters before supper, I am sure. Yes, I *will*. Will what? "Will have finished my letters."

Shall, in like manner, may with propriety be applied to the *second* and *third* persons. In the *third* person, for instance, if I say, "He *will* have paid me his bill before June," I merely foretell what he will have done; but that is not what I intended to say. I meant to convey the idea, that since I have found him so dilatory, I will *compel* him to pay it before June; and as this was my meaning, I *should* have employed *shall*, as in the first future, and said, "He *shall* have paid me his bill before June."

It is true that we seldom use this future; we rather express the idea as nearly as we can, by the *first* future, and say, "He *shall* pay his bill before June;" but when we do use the *second* future, it is evident, I trust, from the examples just given, that *shall* and *will* should be applied in it, exactly as they are in the *first*.—See 1 Cor. xv. 24.—*Luke* xvii. 10.

ON THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

The auxiliary verbs, *Be, have, shall, and will*, are in reality *principal* verbs, having after them, either the Complete Participle, or the *Infinitive* Mood, with the *to* suppressed, for the sake of sound, as it is after *bid, dare, &c.* (see Syntax, Rule VI.) Thus, *I have loved. I am loved. We will to speak. I would to have given him the book. I shall to stop.*

These verbs are always joined in this manner either to the *Infinitive* or the participle; and although this would be a simpler way of parsing the verb than the common, yet, in compliment perhaps to the Greek and Latin, grammarians in general consider the auxiliary and the following verb in the *Infinitive* or participle as *one* verb, and parse and construe it accordingly.

May, might, can, could, must, and ought are sometimes called the auxiliaries of the Potential Mood; but in the opinion of the best modern grammarians there is no such mood.

May, can, must, and ought are Indicative. The omission of *to*, the sign of the *Infinitive*, after *may, can, and must*, does not make them auxiliaries, any more than the same usage makes *bid, dare, need, make*, and several other verbs auxiliaries.

"*I may speak*" simply means, I am *at liberty* to speak. "*I can speak*" means, I am *able* to speak. "*I must write*" means, I am *bound* to write. "*I ought to return*" means, I am *obliged* to return, or it is *my duty* to return. In each of these sentences, the assertion is indicative.

The use of *might, could, should, and would* requires a different explanation. They make an assertion conditionally; that is to say, the action which they affirm is connected with, or dependent on, another action; and the mood is therefore conditional. Thus, "*He might do the work—if he tried.*" "*He could win the prize—if he made an effort.*" "*I should have succeeded—if I had had fair play.*" "*He would have forgiven me—if he had known how I was tempted.*" In these cases, the auxiliary of condition is used in the principal clause.

But the auxiliaries of condition are also used in the subordinate clause, and then the mood is subjunctive. For example—"If *I should* go to London, I shall visit you." "If he *should* write me, I shall answer his letter." In both cases, *should* implies uncertainty and futurity. "*Might* I

give you advice, I should say; refuse": *might I* = if I were at liberty to. "If he *could* reach the bridge, he would be safe": *could* = were able to.

Should is often used with the meaning of *ought*, as in the sentence, We *should* obey the laws, which means, we are bound, or it is our duty, to obey the laws. In this case *should* is Indicative.

Might is also Indicative in such a sentence as, "I think you *might* have helped me," meaning, I think you *were able* to have helped me; but it may also be explained as conditional, meaning, "I think you *might* have helped me, if you had tried."

Could is also Indicative in the sentence, "You *could* have succeeded;" meaning, "You *were able* to have succeeded;" but here also there is an implied condition, for it may mean, "You *could* have succeeded, if you had been industrious."

THE INFINITIVE AND THE PARTICIPLES.

It is often difficult to distinguish between the different forms of the verb ending in *-ing*.

There is, first, the active or incomplete participle; as, The doctor is *building* a new house. Here, *building* is a verbal adjective, qualifying *doctor*, just as *rich* is an adjective in, The doctor is *rich*.

There is, secondly, the infinitive in *-ing*, sometimes called the gerund; as, He loves *reading* (to read) poetry. Here *reading* is partly a noun, because it names an action; but it is also a verb, because it governs *poetry* in the objective case.

There is, thirdly, the verbal abstract in *-ing*; as, The family met to hear the *reading* of their father's will. Here *reading* is really an abstract noun. The abstract noun *recitation* might be substituted for it.

There is, fourthly, the common noun in *-ing*; as, The professor lectured on the *writings* of Milton; where *writings* means "works," or "books."

In *Building* operations have begun, *building* is a participle or an adjective. In *The building* is finished, *building* (the house) is a common noun.

In a *writing-desk*, *writing* is not a participle, but a gerundial infinitive. The compound means, not a desk that writes, but a desk for *writing* at. So a *walking-stick* means a stick for *walking* with.

Of WILL and SHALL.

Will, in the *first* person singular and *plural*, intimates *resolution* and *promising*; as, I *will* not let you that house unless you give me a higher rent. *We will* go. *I will* give you a handsome watch.

Will, in the *second* and *third* persons, commonly *foretells*; as, He *will* reward the righteous. You, or they, *will* be very happy there.

Shall, in the *first* person, only *foretells*; as, I, or we, *shall* go to-morrow. In the *second* and *third* persons, *Shall*, *promises*, *commands*, or *threatens*; as, They, or you, *shall* be rewarded. Thou *shalt* not be dishonest. He that steals *shall* be disgraced.

But this must be understood of affirmative sentences only; for when the sentence is interrogative, just the reverse commonly takes place; as, *Shall* I send you a little of the pie? i.e. *will* you permit me to send it? *Will* James return to-morrow? i.e. do you expect him?

When the *second* and *third* persons are represented as the subjects of their own expressions, or their own thoughts, *SHALL* foretells, as in the *first* person; as, "He says *he shall* be a loser by this bargain." "Do you suppose you *shall* go?" and *WILL* promises, as in the *first* person; as, "He says *he will* bring Pope's Homer to-morrow." You say you *will* certainly come.

Of *Shall* it may be remarked, that it never expresses the *will* or *resolution* of its *Nominative*: Thus, *I shall* fall, *Thou shalt* love thy neighbour; *He shall* be rewarded, express no resolution on the part of *I, thou, he*.

Did *Will*, on the contrary, always intimate the resolution of its *Nom.* the difficulty of applying *will* and *shall* would be at an end; but this cannot be said; for though *will* in the *first* person always expresses the resolution of its *Nom.*, yet in the *second* and *third* persons it does not *always foretell*, but often intimates the resolution of its *Nom.* as strongly as it does in the *first* person; thus, Ye *will* not do your duty, that you may prosper. He *will* not shoot his dog though he sees he is mad. *Deut. xxv. 7*, see also verse 9. Accordingly *would*, the past time of *will*, is used in the same manner; as, He *would* not listen to his father's advice.

Should and *would* are subject to the same rules as *shall* and *will*; but they generally imply a condition or a supposition; as, Were he to run, he *would* soon be fatigued; If he *should* return before Easter, I shall be surprised. (See pp. 27, 28.)

100

[Faint, illegible text covering the majority of the page]

100

100

100

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

TO BE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I am	1. We are
2. Thou art or you are	2. Ye or you are
3. He, she, or it is	3. They are

Past Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I was	1. We were
2. Thou wast or you were	2. Ye or you were
3. He, she, or it was	3. They were

Perfect Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I have been	1. We have been
2. Thou hast been	2. You have been
3. He has been	3. They have been

Pluperfect Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I had been	1. We had been
2. Thou hadst been	2. You had been
3. He had been	3. They had been

Future Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I shall or will be	1. We shall or will be
2. Thou shalt or wilt be	2. You shall or will be
3. He shall or will be	3. They shall or will be

Future Perfect Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I shall or will have been	1. We shall or will have been
2. Thou shalt or wilt have been	2. Ye or you shall or will have been
3. He, she, or it shall or will have been.	3. They shall or will have been

Subjunctive Mood.

Indefinite Tense.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. If <i>I</i> were | 1. If we were |
| 2. If thou wert | 2. If ye or you were |
| 3. If he were | 3. If they were |

Past Tense.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. If I had been | 1. If we had been |
| 2. If thou hadst been | 2. If ye or you had been |
| 3. If he had been | 3. If they had been |

Future Tense.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. If I be, or should be | 1. If we be, or should be |
| 2. If thou beest, or shouldst be | 2. If ye or you be, or should be |
| 3. If he be, or should be | 3. If they be, or should be |

Imperative Mood.

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| Be, or be thou | Be, or be ye or you |

Infinitive Mood.

Indefinite, To be ; Gerund, Being ; Perfect, To have been

Participles.

Incomplete, Being Complete, Been

TO HAVE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I have | 1. We have |
| 2. Thou hast or you have | 2. Ye or you have |
| 3. He, she, or it has or hath | 3. They have |

* *Though, unless, except, whether, &c., may be here used as well as* ʋ.

Past Tense.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I had | 1. We had |
| 2. Thou hadst or you had | 2. Ye or you had |
| 3. He, she, or it had | 3. They had |

Infinitive Mood.

Indefinite, To have ; Gerund, Having ; Perfect, To have had

Participles.

Incomplete, Having Complete, Had

SHALL.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I shall | 1. We shall |
| 2. Thou shalt or you shall | 2. Ye or you shall |
| 3. He, she, or it shall | 3. They shall |

Past Tense.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I should | 1. We should |
| 2. Thou shouldst or you should | 2. Ye or you should |
| 3. He, she, or it should | 3. They should |

WILL.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I will | 1. We will |
| 2. Thou wilt or you will | 2. Ye or you will |
| 3. He, she, or it will | 3. They will |

Past Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I would | 1. We would |
| 2. Thou wouldst or you would | 2. Ye or you would |
| 3. He, she, or it would | 3. They would |

DO.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I do	1. We do
2. Thou dost	2. Ye or you do
3. He does or doth	3. They do

Past Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. I did	1. We did
2. Thou didst	2. Ye or you did
3. He did	3. They did

Infinitive, To do; *Gerund*, Doing.
Participles, Doing, done.

Do is used in asking questions; as, "Do you hear the lark? Did he return the book?"

Of CONJUGATION.

The *Conjugation* of a verb depends on the formation of its past tense, and of its passive or complete participle.

There are two conjugations, the *Regular* or *Weak*, and the *Irregular* or *Strong*.

Regular or *Weak* verbs form the past tense and the passive participle by adding *d* or *ed* to the present tense; as, *love, loved*; *call, called*.

Irregular or *Strong* verbs form the past tense and the passive participle by vowel change, or by adding *-en* for the passive participle; as, *awake, awoke*; *break, broke, broken*.

Some *Regular* or *Weak* verbs have their past tense and passive participle in *-t*; as, *bend, bent* (for *bended*), *send, sent* (for *sended*). Sometimes the addition of *t* or *d* leads to a vowel change; as, *bleed, bled*; *feel, felt*.

CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE VOICE.
TO LOVE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. <i>person</i> I love		1. We love	
2. Thou lovest		2. You* love	
3. He loves or loveth		3. They love	

Past Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. I loved		1. We loved	
2. Thou lovedst		2. You loved	
3. He loved		3. They loved	

Perfect Tense.

Its signs are *have, hast, has, or hath.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. I have loved		1. We have loved	
2. Thou hast loved		2. You have loved	
3. He has or hath loved		3. They have loved	

Pluperfect Tense.

Signs, *had, hadst.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. I had loved		1. We had loved	
2. Thou hadst loved		2. You had loved	
3. He had loved		3. They had loved	

Future Tense.

Signs, *shall or will.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. I shall or will love		1. We shall or will love	
2. Thou shalt or wilt love		2. You shall or will love	
3. He shall or will love		3. They shall or will love	

* You has always a plural verb, even when applied to a single individual.

Future Perfect.

[See page 26.]

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. I shall or will have loved | 1. We shall or will have loved |
| 2. Thou shalt or wilt have loved | 2. You shall or will have loved |
| 3. He shall or will have loved | 3. They shall or will have loved |

Subjunctive Mood.

Indefinite Tense.

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. If I loved | 1. If we loved |
| 2. If thou lovedst | 2. If you loved |
| 3. If he loved | 3. If they loved |

Past Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. If I had loved | 1. If we had loved |
| 2. If thou hadst loved | 2. If you had loved |
| 3. If he had loved | 3. If they had loved |

Future Tense.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 1. If I love, or should love | 1. If we love, or should love |
| 2. If thou love, or shouldst love | 2. If you love, or should love |
| 3. If he love, or should love | 3. If they love, or should love |

Imperative Mood.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
| 2. Love, or love thou, or do thou love† | 2. Love, or love ye or you, or do ye love |

* The remaining tenses in the Subjunctive mood are, in every respect, similar to the corresponding tenses of the Indicative, with the addition to the verb of a conjunction expressed or implied, denoting a condition or supposition.

† The Imperative Mood is not entitled to three persons. In strict propriety it has only the second person in both numbers. For when I say, *Let me love*, I mean, *Permit thou me to love*. Hence, *let me love* is construed thus: *let thou me (to) love*, or *do thou let me (to) love*. *To*, the sign of the infinitive, is not used after *let*. See Syntax, R. VI. No one will say that *permit (me to love)* is the first person singular, Imperative mood: then, why should *let (me to love)*, which is exactly similar, be called the first person? The Latin verb wants the first person, and if it has the third, it has also a different termination for it, which is not the case in the English verb. K. 118.

Infinitive Mood.

Indefinite, To love; *Gerund*, Loving; *Perfect*, To have loved

Participles.

Incomplete, Loving *Complete*, Loved
Perfect, Having loved*

EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE

† We love him; James loves me; It amuses him; we shall conduct them; they will divide the spoil; soldiers should defend their country; friends invite friends; she can read her lesson; she may play a tune; you might please her; thou mayst ask him; he may have betrayed us; we might have diverted the children; John can deliver the message.

I love; to love; love; reprove thou; has loved; we tied the knot; if we love; if thou love; they could have commanded armies; to love; to baptize; to have loved; loved; loving; to survey; having surveyed; write a letter; read your lesson; thou hast obeyed my voice; honour thy father.

* See Key, No. 208-211.

The Teacher, if he chooses, may now acquaint the learner with the difference between the Nominative and the Objective.

The Nominative acts; the Objective is acted upon; as, *He eats apples*. The Nominative commonly comes before the verb, the Objective after it.

Concerning pronouns, it may be observed, that the first speaks; the second is spoken to; and the third (or any noun) is spoken of.

We may parse the first sentence, for example. *We* love *him*; *We*, the first personal pronoun, plural, masculine, or fem. the Nominative; *love*, a verb active, the first person, plural, present, Indicative; *him*, the third personal pronoun, singular, masculine, the Objective.

QUESTIONS which should be put to the pupils.

How do you know that *love* is plural? *Ans.* Because *us* its nom. is plural. How do you know that *love* is the first person? *Ans.* Because *us* is the first personal pronoun, and the verb is always of the same number and person with the noun or pronoun before it. K. 102, 104.

Many of the phrases in this page may be converted into exercises of a different kind: thus, the meaning of the sentence, *We love him*, may be expressed by the passive voice; as, *He is loved by us*.

CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.
TO BE LOVED.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. Am loved
2. Art loved
3. Is loved

Plural.

1. Are loved
2. Are loved
3. Are loved

Past Tense.

Singular.

1. Was loved
2. Wast loved
3. Was loved

Plural.

1. Were loved
2. Were loved
3. Were loved

Perfect Tense.

Singular.

1. Have been loved
2. Hast been loved
3. Has been loved

Plural.

1. Have been loved
2. Have been loved
3. Have been loved

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular.

1. Had been loved
2. Hadst been loved
3. Had been loved

Plural.

1. Had been loved
2. Had been loved
3. Had been loved

Future Tense.

Singular.

1. Shall or will be loved
2. Shalt or wilt be loved
3. Shall or will be loved

Plural.

1. Shall or will be loved
2. Shall or will be loved
3. Shall or will be loved

It may also be turned into a question, or made a negative ; as, *Do we love him?* &c. *We do not love him.*

These are a few of the ways of using the exercises on a single page ; but there is no limit to the variety of methods that every ingenious and diligent Teacher may invent and adopt to engage the attention and improve the understanding of his pupils.

The *Passive* voice is formed by putting the *Passive Participle* of any transitive verb after the verb *to be* through all its Moods and Tenses. K. 126, 127.

Future Perfect Tense.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Shall <i>or</i> will have been loved | 1. Shall <i>or</i> will have been loved |
| 2. Shalt <i>or</i> will have been loved | 2. Shall <i>or</i> will have been loved |
| 3. Shall <i>or</i> will have been loved | 3. Shall <i>or</i> will have been loved |

Subjunctive Mood.

Indefinite Tense.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. If* I were loved | 1. If we were loved |
| 2. If thou wert loved | 2. If you were loved |
| 3. If he were loved | 3. If they were loved |

Past Tense.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. If I had been loved | 1. If we had been loved |
| 2. If thou hadst been loved | 2. If you had been loved |
| 3. If he had been loved | 3. If they had been loved |

Future Tense.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. If I (should) be loved | 1. If we (should) be loved |
| 2. If thou (shouldst) be loved | 2. If you (should) be loved |
| 3. If he (should) be loved | 3. If they (should) be loved |

Imperative Mood.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| 2. Be thou loved | 2. Be ye <i>or</i> you loved |
|------------------|------------------------------|

Infinitive Mood.

*Present, To be loved**Perfect, To have been loved*

Participles.

*Indefinite, Loved; Incomplete, Being loved;
Perfect, Having been loved*

* The Pupil may at times be requested to throw out *if* and put *unless, though, whether, or lest*, in its place.

EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

They are loved; we were loved; thou art loved; it is loved; she was loved; he has been loved; you have been loved; I have been loved; thou hadst been loved; we shall be loved; thou wilt be loved; they will be loved; I shall have been loved; you will have been loved.

He will be loved; thou shalt be loved; she shall be loved; if they were loved; if they should be loved; if I be loved;* thou wert loved; we be loved; they be loved; if thou wert loved; we were loved; you were loved; thou shouldst be loved; we should be loved.— Be thou loved; be ye loved; you be loved.— To be loved; loved; having been loved; to have been loved; being loved.

*Promiscuous Exercises on Verbs, and on Cases
of Nouns and Pronouns.*

Tie John's shoes; this is Jane's bonnet; ask mamma; he has learned his lesson; she invited him; your father may commend you; he was baptized; the minister baptized him; we should have delivered our message; papa will reprove us; divide the apples; the captain had commanded his soldiers to pursue the enemy; Eliza diverted her brother; a hunter

After the pupil has become expert in going over the tenses of the verb as they are given in the preceding pages, he may be required to go over the Future and the Future Perfect Tense with each auxiliary separately, in accordance with the notes on page 29, thus—(1) simply foretelling: I *shall* love, thou *wilt* love, he *will* love, we *shall* love, you *will* love, they *will* love; (2) expressing determination: I *will* love, thou *shalt* love, he *shall* love, we *will* love, you *shall* love, they *shall* love.

* A conjunction is frequently to be understood here.

killed a hare ; were* I loved ; were we good, we should be happy. †

A *Verb* may be conjugated through all its moods and tenses, by adding its *Active* or *Incomplete Participle* to the verb *To be*. This is called the *Progressive* form ; ‡ because it expresses the continuation of action or state : *Thus*,

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Past.</i>
I am loving		I was loving
Thou art loving		Thou wast loving
He is loving, &c.		He was loving, &c.

The Present and Past Indicative may also be conjugated by the assistance of Do. This is called the Emphatic form : Thus,

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Past.</i>
I do love		I did love
Thou dost love		Thou didst love
He does love, &c.		He did love, &c.

RULE I.

Verbs ending in ss, sh, ch, x, or o, form the third person singular of the Present Indicative, by adding ES : Thus,

He-dress-es, brush-es, march-es, fix-es, go-es.

RULE II.

Verbs in y, preceded by a consonant, change y into i before the terminations est, es, eth, and ed ; but not before ing ;—Y, with a vowel before it, is not changed into i : Thus,

Pres. Try, triest, tries, or trieth. *Past.* tried. *Part.* trying.
Pres. Pray, prayest, prays or *Past.* prayed. *Part.* praying, prayeth.

RULE III.

Verbs accented on the last syllable, and verbs of one syllable, ending in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant before the terminations est, eth, ed, ing ; but never before s ; Thus,

Allot, allottest, allots, alloteth, allotted, allotting.
Blot, blottest, blots, blotteth, blotted, blotting.

* A conjunction is frequently to be understood here.

† See Exercises of a different sort, page 54.

‡ The *Passive* voice has NO *Progressive* Form, such as, *I have been being loved*—*I shall be being loved* ; but it is used in the *Present* and the *Past*, as, *The book is being printed* ; *I was being shaved*.

IRREGULAR OR STRONG VERBS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Passive Participle.</i>
Abide	abode	abode
Am	was	been
Arise	arose	arisen
Awake	awoke R *	awaked
Beār, <i>to bring forth</i>	bore, † bare	bōrn
Beār, <i>to carry</i>	bore, bare	bōrne
Beat	beat	beaten, or beat
Begin	began	begun
Behold	beheld	beheld, or beholden
Beseech	besought	besought
Bid, <i>for-</i>	bad, bāde	bidden
Bind, <i>un-</i>	bound	bound
Bite	bit	bitten, bit
Blow	blew	blown
Breāk	broke	broken
Bring	brought	brought
Buy	bought	bought
Catch	caught R	caught R
Chide	chid	chidden, or chid
Choose	chose	chosen
Cleave, <i>to split</i>	clove, or cleft	cloven, or cleft
Cling	clung	clung
Come, <i>be</i>	came	come
Crow	crew R	crowed
Dare, <i>to venture</i>	durst	dared
Dare, <i>to challenge is</i> R	dared	dared
Dig	dug, or digged	dug, or digged
Do, <i>un-†</i>	did	done

* Those verbs which are conjugated regularly, as well as irregularly, are marked with an R.

† *Bore* is now more used than *bare*.

‡ The compound verbs are conjugated like the simple, by prefixing the syllables appended to them; thus, *Undo, undid, undone*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Passive Participle.</i>
Draw, <i>with-</i>	drew	drawn
Drink	drank	drunk
Drive	drove	driven
Eat	āte*	ēaten*
Fall, <i>be-</i>	fell	fallen
Fight	fought	fought
Find	found	found
Fling	flung	flung
Fly, <i>as a bird</i>	flew	flown
Förbear	forbore	forbörne
Forget	forgot	forgotten, forgot
Forsake	forsook	forsaken
Freeze	froze	frozen
Get, <i>be- for-</i>	got†	got, gotten‡
Give, <i>for- mis-</i>	gave	given
Go	went	gone
Grind	ground	ground
Grow	grew	grown
Hang	hung	hung§
Häve	had	had
Hide	hid	hidden, or hid
Hit	hit	hit
Hold, <i>be- with-</i>	held	held
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Knit	knit R	knit, or knitted
Know	knew	known

* I have excluded *eat* as the Past and Pass. Participle of this verb, for though sometimes used by Milton and a few others, the use of it does not rest on recent authority, and this verb is sufficiently irregular already.

† *Got* and *begot* are often used in the Scriptures for *got* and *begot*.

‡ *Gotten* is nearly obsolete. Its compound *forgotten* is still in good use.

§ *Hang*, to take away life by hanging, is regular; as, The robber was *hanged*, but the gown was *hung* up.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Passive Participle.</i>
Lay, <i>in-</i>	laid	laid
Lead, <i>mis-</i>	led	led
Leave	left	left
Lend	lent	lent
Let	let	let
Lie, <i>to lie down</i>	lay	lain, or liēn
Light	lit R	lit R
Rēad	rēad	rēad
Rid	rid	rid
Ride	rode	ridden
Ring	rang, or rung *	rung
Rise; <i>a-</i>	rose	risen
Run	ran	run
See	saw	seen
Sell	sold	sold
Shake	shook	shaken
Shear	shore R	shōrn
Shine	shōne R	shōne R
Shrink	shrank, or shrunk	shrunk
Shut	shut	shut
Sing	sang, or sung *	sung
Sink	sank, or sunk	sunk
Sit	sat †	sitten, or sat †
Slay	slew	slain
Sling	slang, or slung *	slung
Slink	slank, or slunk	slunk
Smite	smote	smitten
Sow	sowed	sōwn R

* Where the Past might be either *ang* or *ung*, &c., I have given *ang* the preference, which it certainly ought to have.

† Many authors, both here and in America, use *sate* as the Past time of *sit*; but this is improper; for it is apt to be confounded with *sate*, to glut.

‡ *Sitten* is preferable, though obsolescent.

✓

20

20

20

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Passive Participle.</i>
Speak, <i>be-</i>	spoke, spake	spoken
Spin	span, <i>or</i> spun	spun
Spit, <i>be-</i>	spat, <i>or</i> spit	spitten, <i>or</i> spit*
Spring	sprang, <i>or</i> sprung	sprung
Stand, <i>with- &c.</i>	stood	stood
Steal	stole	stolen
Stick	stuck	stuck
Sting	stung	stung
Stink	stank, <i>or</i> stunk	stunk
Stride, <i>be-</i>	strode, <i>or</i> strid	stridden
Strike	struck	struck, <i>or</i> stricken
String	strung	strung
Strive	strove	striven
Sweār	swore, <i>or</i> sware	swōrn
Swēat	swēat	swēat
Sweep	swept	swept
Swim	swam, <i>or</i> swum	swum
Swing	swung	swung
Take, <i>be- &c.</i>	took	taken
Teār	tore, <i>or</i> tare	tōrn
Tell	told	told
Thrive	throve R	thriven
Throw	threw	thrown
Trēad	trod	trodden
Weār	wore	wōrn
Weave	wove	woven
Win	won	won
Wind	wōnd R	wōnd
Wring	wrung R	wrung
Write	wrote	written

* *Spitten* is preferable, though obsolescent.

Defective verbs are those which want some of their moods and tenses.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Pass. Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Pass. Participle.</i>
Can,	could,	_____	Quoth,	quoth,	_____
May,	might,	_____	Shall,	should,	_____
Must,	must,	_____	Will,	would,	_____
Owe,	ought,	_____	Wot,	wist,	_____

Many verbs that appear to be Irregular or Strong are really Regular or Weak Verbs which have undergone a vowel change in adding *d* or *t* for the past tense, or which have lost the suffix. For example:—

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Passive Participle.</i>
Bend	bent (bended)	bent (bended)
Bereave	bereft	bereft
Bleed	bled	bled
Build	built	built
Burst	burst	burst
Cast	cast	cast
Cleave	cleaved, or clave	cleaved
Clothe	clothed	clad
Cost	cost	cost
Creep	crept	crept
Cut	cut	cut
Deal	dealt	dealt
Dwell	dwelt	dwelt
Feed	fed	fed
Feel	felt	felt
Flee	fled	fled
Gild	gilt	gilt
Grave	graved	graven
Hear	heard	heard

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Passive Participle.</i>
Keep	kept	kept
Kneel	knelt	knelt
Load	loaded	loaden
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made	made
Mean	meant	meant
Meet	met	met
Mow	mowed	mown
Pay	paid	paid
Put	put	put
Quit	quit	quit
Rive	rived	riven
Saw	sawed	sawn
Say	said	said
Seek	sought	sought
Seethe	seethed, or sod	sodden
Set	set	set
Shape	shaped	shapen
Shed	shed	shed
Shoe	shod	shod
Shoot	shot	shot
Show	showed	shown
Slide	slid	slidden
Slit	slit	slit
Speed	sped	sped
Spill	spilt	spilt
Spread	spread	spread
Strew	strewed	strewn
Swell	swelled	swollen
Teach	taught	taught
Think	thought	thought
Thrust	thrust	thrust

Participle.

CONJUGATION OF A STRONG VERB.
ACTIVE VOICE, TO DRIVE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.—I drive, Thou drivest, He drives
or driveth, etc.

Past Tense.—I drove, Thou drovest, He drove, etc.

Perfect Tense.—I have driven, Thou hast driven,
etc.

Pluperfect T.—I had driven, Thou hadst driven,

Future Tense.—I shall or will drive, Thou shalt
or wilt drive, etc.

Future-perfect.—I shall or will have driven, Thou
shalt or wilt have driven.

Subjunctive Mood.

Indefinite Tense.—If I drove, If thou drovest, etc.

Past Tense.—If I had driven, If thou hadst
driven, etc.

Future Tense.—If I (should) drive, If thou
(shouldst) drive, If he (should)
drive, etc.

Imperative Mood.

Singular.—Drive, or drive thou, or do thou drive.

Plural.—Drive, or drive ye, or do ye drive.

Infinitive Mood.

Indefinite, To drive; Gerund, Driving;

Perfect, To have driven.

Participles.

Indefinite, Driving; Complete, Driven;

Perfect, Having driven.

PASSIVE VOICE, TO BE DRIVEN.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.—I am driven, Thou art driven, etc.

Past Tense.—I was driven, Thou wast driven, etc.

* *Perfect Tense.*—I have been driven, Thou hast been driven, etc.

Pluperfect.—I had been driven, Thou hadst been driven, etc.

Future Tense.—I shall or will be driven, etc.

Future-perfect.—I shall or will have been driven, etc.

Subjunctive Mood.

Indefinite Tense.—If I were driven, If thou wert driven, etc.

Past Tense.—If I had been driven, If thou hadst been driven, etc.

Future Tense.—If I (should) be driven, If thou (shouldst) be driven, etc.

Imperative Mood.

Singular, Be thou driven. *Plural,* Be ye driven.

Infinitive Mood.

Indefinite, To be driven.

Perfect, To have been driven.

Participles.

Indefinite, Driven ; *Incomplete,* Being driven ;

Perfect, Having been driven.

The Adverb.

An *Adverb* is a word joined to a *verb*, to express how, when, or where, or in what circumstances, the action is done; as, Ann speaks *well*; Mary came *yesterday*; Philip was *there*.

Adverbs are also joined to adjectives; as, John is *very* diligent; and to other adverbs; as, William acted *most* promptly.

Adverbs may be divided into classes, viz.:

1. Adverbs of *Time*; as, Ago, already, always, daily, early, hourly, immediately, never, now, presently, to-day, to-morrow.

2. Adverbs of *Place*; as, Above, apart, asunder, backward, below, downward, elsewhere, far, forth, hence, here.

3. Adverbs of *Number*; as, Once, twice, thrice, first, secondly, again, often.

4. Adverbs of *Quantity*; as, Almost, enough, exceedingly, fully, more, much, most, nearly, so, too, very.

5. Adverbs of *Quality*; as, Badly, cleverly, correctly, how, ill, poorly, quickly, slowly, softly, sweetly, well, wisely.

6. Adverbs of *Affirmation, Negation, and Doubt*; as, Ay, certainly, doubtless, haply, nay, not, nowise, peradventure, perhaps, surely, truly, undoubtedly, yea, yes.

OBSERVATIONS.

Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, as adjectives qualify nouns.

In many instances, adverbs admit of degrees of comparison like adjectives. Some are compared by adding *er* and *est*: as, *often, oftener, oftenest*; some by prefixing *more* and *most*: as, *wisely, more wisely, most wisely*; some are compared irregularly; as, *ill, worse, worst; much, more, most; well, better, best*.

Most of the adverbs which end in *ly* are formed from adjectives by adding *ly*: as, *foolish, foolishly*; and they are usually compared by prefixing *more* and *most*.

Some adverbs are formed from nouns or adjectives by prefixing *a*: as, *a-shore, a-far*.

When *more* and *most* qualify nouns they are *adjectives*; but in every other situation they are *adverbs*.

EXERCISES ON ADVERBS.

He went off immediately. I then wept bitterly. He is here now. She went away yesterday.* They came to-day. They will perhaps depart to-morrow. He will soon go away. She sung sweetly. Cats soon know how to catch mice. Maria rose up hastily. They that have enough † may soundly sleep. Cain wickedly slew his brother. I saw him long ago. He is a very good man. Sooner or later all must die. You read too little. They talk too much. Always act wisely. How many lines can you repeat? You ran hastily. He speaks fluently. Then were they happy. He fell fast asleep. She should not hold her head awry. The ship was driven ashore. No, indeed. They are all alike. Those that were thirsty drank freely. The oftener you read attentively, the better you will remember.

OBSERVATIONS.

* *To-day*, *yesterday*, and *to-morrow*, are also nouns, for they are parts of time; as, *Yesterday* is past, *to-day* is passing, and we may never see *to-morrow*.—When these words answer to the question *when*, they are governed by a preposition *understood*; as, When will John come home? (on) *to-morrow*, for he went away (on) *yesterday*.

Much is used, 1. as an *adverb*; as, It is *much* better to live well than not.
2. as an *adjective*; as, In *much* wealth is *much* care.
3. as a *noun*; as, When *much* is promised, *much* is expected.

In strict propriety, however, *much* can never be a *noun*, but an *adjective*: for were the question to be asked, *Much what is given?* it would be necessary to add a *noun*, and say, Where *much* grace is given, *much* gratitude is required.

† *To*, before the infinitive of verbs, is an *adverb*, according to Johnson; and according to Murray, a *preposition*. The *two together* may be called the infinitive.

‡ *Enough* (a sufficiency) is here a *noun*. Its plural, *enow*, is applied like *many*, to things that are numbered. *Enough*, an *adj.* like *much*, should perhaps be applied only to things that are weighed or measured.

The Preposition.

A *Preposition* is a word put before nouns and pronouns, to show their relation to other words ; as, He sailed *from* Leith *to* London *in* two days.

A LIST OF PREPOSITIONS.

To be got accurately by heart.

About, above, across, after, against, along, amid, amidst, among, amongst, around, at, athwart, Before, behind, below, beneath, beside, besides, between, betwixt, beyond, by. Down, during. Except. For, from. In, into. Near, nigh. Of, off, on, over. Round. Save, since. Through, throughout, till, to, towards.* Under, underneath, unto, up, upon. With, within, without.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS.

The boys mounted to the top of the haystack. The last of the Tudors was succeeded by the first of the Stuarts. The company was scattered over the field beside the lake. The sisters sat under the shade of a wide-spreading beech tree. Before the letter reached him, he stood before the altar. The prisoner walked into the dock between two constables, with batons in their hands. After the verdict was given, he went out after his agent. The meeting of the council was held in the town-hall at six o'clock. Since

* *Towards* is a *preposition*, but *toward* is an *adjective*, and means "Ready to do or learn ; compliant with duty ; not froward." *Toward* is sometimes improperly used for *towards*.

The *inseparable* prepositions are omitted, because an explanation of them can impart no information without a previous knowledge of the radical word. Suppose the pupil told that *con* means *together*, will this explain *convens* to him ? No ; he must first be told that *vens* signifies to come, and then *con*, *together*. Would it not be better to tell him at once that *convens* means to come or call together ?

you have asked me, I may say that I have not been near the harbour since Tuesday. He leaned upon his staff. The soldier rested against a tree. He had been struck on the face by one of the rioters with a heavy stick. The son of the doctor fell off the bridge into the river.

OBSERVATIONS.

Every preposition requires an objective case after it.—When a preposition does not govern an objective case, it becomes an adverb; as, he rides *about*. But in such phrases as, *cast up, hold out, fall on*, the words *up, out, and on*, must be considered as a part of the verb, rather than as prepositions or adverbs.

Some words are used as prepositions in one place, and as adverbs in another; thus, *before* is a preposition when it refers to *place*; as, He stood *before* the door; and an adverb when it refers to *time*; as, *Before* that the boy called thee, I saw thee. The word *before*, however, and others in similar situations, may still be considered as prepositions, if we supply an appropriate noun; as, *Before* the *time* that the boy, &c.

The Conjunction.

A *Conjunction* is a word which joins words and sentences together; as, You *and* I must go to Leith; *but* Peter may stay at home.

Conjunctions are of two kinds—*Co-ordinative* and *Subordinative*.

Co-ordinative Conjunctions join co-ordinate clauses (see p. 211); as, The Spring has returned, *and* the leaves have come. They are, *and, but, or, nor, for*.

Subordinative Conjunctions join a subordinate to a superior clause (see p. 196); as, The leaves return *when* Spring returns. They are, *when, where, as, than, that, because, if, though, lest, unless, &c.*

EXERCISES ON CONJUNCTIONS.

Love your master: for it is your duty. Some children have neither father nor mother alive:

have not
He leaned
inst a tree.
one of the
son of the
er.

it.—When a
comes an adverb ;
out, fall on, the
the verb, rather

and as adverbs in
o place ; as, He
time ; as, Before
e, however, and
prepositions, if
at the boy, &c.

pins words
and I must
come.

-ordinative

co-ordinate
s returned,
e, and, but,

a subordi-
s) ; as, The
They are,
though, lest,

nty. Some
ther alive :

but they are, nevertheless, as happy and healthy
as many that have both : because the Divine
Being has put it into the hearts of others to take
care of them. If you study diligently, then you
may expect to acquire much knowledge : but
unless you study, you cannot know much.

OBSERVATIONS.

Several words which are marked as adverbs in Johnson's Dictionary
are in many Grammars marked as conjunctions ; such as, *Albeit, else,*
moreover, likewise, otherwise, nevertheless, then, therefore, wherefore.

But in some cases is an adverb ; as, "We are *but* (only) of yesterday,
and know nothing."

Sometimes the same words are used as conjunctions in one place, and
as prepositions or adverbs in another place ; as, *Since* (conj.) we must
part, let us do it peaceably ; I have not seen him *since* (prep.) that time.
Our friendship commenced long *since* (adv.) *

The Interjection.

An *Interjection* is a word which expresses
some emotion of the speaker ; as, *Oh*, what a
sight is here ! *Hurrah!* the work is done.

A LIST OF INTERJECTIONS.

Adieu ! ah ! alas ! alack ! away ! aha ! begone !
hark ! ho ! ha ! he ! hail ! hallo ! hum ! hush !
huzzā ! hist ! hey-day ! lo ! O ! oh ! strange !
O brave ! pshaw ! see ! well-a-day ! &c.

EXERCISES ON INTERJECTIONS.

Alas ! what shall I do now ? Ah, there goes
the last of the clan ! Hail to the chief who in

* As many distinctions, however proper in themselves, may prove
more hurtful than useful, they should not be made till the learner be
perfectly acquainted with the more obvious facts.

triumph advances! O for a touch of the vanished hand! Begone, dull care! Away with such phantoms! Adieu to prosperity. Hark, the lark at heaven's gate sings! Lo! the clouds have vanished. Hush! listen to the nightingale. Pshaw! I care not for your threats. Aha! the tide has turned. Huzza! the foe has fired his tents. - Well-a-day, we are undone. Hallo! what is your business here? Hist! what says the mocking-bird?

CORRECT THE ERRORS.

I saw a boy which is blind.*	We was not there.†
I saw a flock of geoses.	I loves him.
This is the horse who was lost.	He love me.
This is the hat whom I wear.	Thou have been busy.
John is here, she is a good boy.	He dare not speak.
The hen lays his eggs.	She need not do it.
Jane is here, he reads well.	Was you there?
I saw two mouses.	You was not there.
The dog follows her master.	We was sorry for it.
This two horses eat hay.	Thou might not go.
John met three mans.	He dost not learn.
We saw two childs.	If I does that.
He has but one teeth.	Thou may do it.
The well is ten foot deep.	You was never there.
Look at the oxes.	The book were lost.
This horse will let me ride on her.	Thou will better stop.
I can stay this two hours.	The horses was sold.
I have two pen-knives.	The boys was reading.
My lady has got his fan.	I teaches him grammar.
Two pair of ladies's gloves.	He are not attentive to it.
Henry the Eighth had six wives.	Thou shall not go out.
I saw the man which sings.	If I bees not at home.
We saw an ass who brayed at us.	Thou can do nothing for me.
They will stay this two days.	There is only two of us, John and you.

* These exercises will at once amuse and improve the pupil. See Syntax, Rules 14 and 15.

† Syntax, Rule 1.

ON PARSING.

HAVING the exercises on Parsing and Syntax in *one* volume with the Grammar, is a *convenience*, so exceedingly great, that it must be obvious. The following set of exercises on Parsing are arranged on a plan *new* and important.

All the most material points, and those that are apt to puzzle the pupil, have been selected, and made the subject of a whole page of exercises, and where very important, of two. By this means, the same point must come so often under his eye, and be so often repeated, that it cannot fail to make a deep impression on his mind; and even should he forget it, it will be easy to refresh his memory by turning to it again.

To give full scope to the pupil's discriminating powers, the exercises contain all the parts of speech, promiscuously arranged, to be used thus:

1. After the pupil has got the definition of a noun, exercise him in going over any part of the exercises in parsing, and pointing out the *NOUNS only*. This will oblige him to exercise his powers of discrimination in distinguishing the nouns from the other words.
2. After getting the definition of an adjective, exercise him in selecting all the *adjectives* from the other words, and telling *why* they are adjectives.
3. After getting all the *pronouns* very accurately by heart, let him point them out, in addition to the nouns and adjectives.
4. Then the *verb*, without telling what *sort*, or what *number*, or *person*, or *tense*, for several weeks, or longer, till he can distinguish it with great readiness.
5. Then the definition of an *adverb*, after which exercise him *orally* with many short sentences containing adverbs, and then on those in the book.
6. Get all the prepositions by heart, for it is impossible to give such a definition of a preposition as will lead a child to distinguish it with certainty from every other sort of word.*

* It is at the same time desirable to accustom the pupils as early as possible to recognise the parts of speech, not by memory, and not by consulting a dictionary, but by observing their separate functions in the sentence. It will be found very helpful in this respect to take the lessons and exercises in Analysis of Sentences in the Appendix, along with the Exercises on Syntax and Parsing. Analysis, for example, brings out clearly the function of the Noun as the *naming* part of speech, of the Verb as the *asserting* word, of the Adjective and the Adverb as *descriptive* words, of the Preposition as the *phrase-connective*, and of the Conjunction as the *clause-connective*.

7. Get all the conjunctions by heart. They have been alphabetically arranged, like the prepositions, to facilitate the committing of them to memory.

8. After this, the pupil, if very young, may go over all the exercises by parsing every word in the most simple manner; viz. by saying such a word—a *noun*, *singular*, without telling its *gender* and *case*—such a word, a *verb*, without telling its *nature*, *number*, *person*, *tense*, and *mood*.

9. In the next and last course, he should go over the exercises, and tell every thing about *nouns* and *verbs*, &c., as shown in the example below.

In the Exercises on Parsing, every sentence is numbered in the *Grammar*; but in the *Key*, many sentences are not noticed at all, because they are easy.—Under No. a, for instance, the 2d sentence is noticed in the *Key*, p. 75, but not the 3d, 4th, 5th, 6th, and 7th, because there is nothing difficult in any of them.

The small letters refer to the Nos. For example, *p*, in the first sentence of No. a, directs the learner to turn to No. p, page 76, and remark that it says, "The verb *to be* or *to have* is often understood;" intimating to him by this reference that *to be* is understood after *man* in the first sentence of No. a, and *teaches us* in the second.

A Specimen of Parsing.

O how stupendous was the power,
That raised me with a word;
And every day and every hour,
I lean upon the Lord.

O, an Interjection—*how*, an adverb—*stupendous*, an adjective, in the positive degree, compared by more and most, as, stupendous, more stupendous, most stupendous—*was*, a verb, neuter, third pers. singular, past, indicative ("agreeing with its nominative *power*, here put after it)—*the*, an article, the definite—*power*, a noun, singular, neuter, the nominative—*That*, a relative pronoun, singular, neuter, the nominative, here used for *which*; its antecedent is *power*—*raised*, a verb, trans. third person, singular, past, indicative (agreeing with its nominative *that*)—*me*, the first personal pronoun, singular, masculine, or feminine, the objective (governed by *raised*)—*with*, a preposition—*a*, an article, the indefinite—*word*, a noun, singular, neuter, the objective (governed by *with*)—*And*, a conjunction—*every*, a distributive adjective—*day*, a noun, singular, neuter, the objective (because the preposition *through* or *during* is understood)—*and*, *and every*, as before.—*hour*, a noun, singular, neuter, the objective (because *day* was in it, and conjunctions couple the same cases of nouns, &c.)—*I*, the first personal pronoun, singular, masculine, or feminine, the nominative—*lean*, a verb, neuter, first person, singular, present, indicative—*upon*, a preposition—*the*, an article, the definite—*Lord*, a noun, singular, masc. the obj. (governed by *upon*).—For *Construction*, see p. 120.

* Omit the words within the () till the pupil get the rules of Syntax.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.

A few easy sentences intended as an Exercise chiefly on the *Transitive Verb*; but to be previously used as an Exercise on Nouns and Adjectives.

No. a.

A good conscience and a contented mind will make a man² happy¹. Philosophy teaches us to endure afflictions, but Christianity³ to enjoy them, by turning them into blessings⁴. Virtue ennobles the mind, but vice debases it⁵. Application in the early period of life renders labour and study easy in succeeding years⁴. True courage fears nothing but sin⁶. Devotion strengthens virtue; calms the temper; and fills the heart with gratitude and praise⁶. An irreligious man dislikes prayer, neglects the Bible, profanes the Sabbath, and prefers his own wicked desires and devices to the will and service of God⁷.

If we give the reins to our appetites and passions, and lay no restraint upon them, they will hurry us into guilt and misery⁸. Good sense stamps a value upon all our other qualities; it teaches us to make a proper use of our acquirements, and to turn our opportunities to advantage: it shows itself in all our words and actions, and in every occurrence of life⁹. Shame and disappointment follow sloth and idleness¹⁰. The darkness, which follows sunset, hides the earth, but reveals the heavens¹¹.

¹ Supply *teaches us*, as a reference to No. *p* Intimates.

² See the ~~one~~ on the preceding page.—See also Key, p. 75, &c.

EXERCISES,

Chiefly on the Transitive Verb,—(continued.)

No. a.

Example exerts greater influence than precept¹². Gentleness ought to mark our temper, colour our manners, regulate our speech, and diffuse itself over our whole behaviour¹³. Knowledge makes our being^p pleasant to us, fills the mind with entertaining views, and provides us with sources of perpetual gratification¹⁴. Meekness contrōls our angry passions; candour^p our severe judgments¹⁵. Perseverance in labour will surmount every difficulty¹⁶. He that takes pleasure in the prosperity of others, enjoys part of their good fortune¹⁷. Restlessness of mind disqualifies us both for the enjoyment of peace, and for the performance of duty¹⁸. Sadness contracts the mind; mirth dilates it¹⁹.

We should subject our fancies to the government of reason²⁰. Self-conceit, presumption, and obstinacy, blast the prospects of many a youth²¹. Mere affluence may give²² us importance in the eyes of the vulgar; but it will not recommend us to the wise and good²². A man of cheerful temper brings sunshine with him wherever he comes; a querulous man creates discontent, and makes others as cross as himself²³. Many lose their labour, because they do not prosecute to the end the good work which they have begun²⁴. Envy and wrath shorten life; and anxiety bringeth age before its time²⁵. Men do not gather grapes of thorns, nor figs of thistles²⁶.

EXERCISES,

Chiefly on the Intransitive Verb, and the verb *To be*.

No. 6.

It is better to live on a little¹ than to outlive² a great deal¹. A good education is a better inheritance than a great estate². It would be well for some men, if they were penniless³. Friendship can scarcely exist where virtue is not the foundation⁴. He that swells in prosperity, will shrink in adversity⁵. He who despairs of good is sure to fall into evil⁶. From idleness arises⁶ neither pleasure nor advantage: we must flee therefore from idleness⁷, the certain parent of guilt and ruin⁷.

You must not always rely on promises⁸. The peace of society dependeth on the due administration of law and justice⁹. He that walketh with wise men shall be wise¹⁰. He that sitteth with the profane is foolish¹¹. The coach arrives daily¹². The mail travels fast¹³. Rain falls in great abundance here¹⁴. He sleeps soundly¹⁵. She dances gracefully¹⁶. I went to York¹⁷. He lives soberly¹⁸. He hurried to his house in the country¹⁹. They smiled²⁰. She laughed²¹. He that liveth in pleasure is dead while he liveth²². To a lover of truth nothing appears to be²³ so low and mean as lying and dissimulation²³. Vice is its own punishment, and virtue is its own reward²⁴. Industry is the road to wealth, and virtue²⁵ to happiness²⁵. A message flies with the speed of lightning along the telegraphic wires²⁶.

EXERCISES,

Chiefly on the Passive Voice.—See Page 37, *bottom*.

No. c.

An accomplished man is admired; an amiable man is loved¹. You may be deprived of rank and riches against your will; but² not of virtue without your consent². Bad habits should be amended, and good ones acquired³. Many are brought to ruin by extravagance and dissipation⁴. The best designs are often ruined by unnecessary delay⁵. Only such recreations should be pursued as are innocent and healthful⁶. Almost all difficulties may be overcome by diligence⁷. Old friends are preserved and new ones are procured by a grateful disposition⁸. Words are like arrows, and should not be shot at random⁹.

A desire to be thought learned* is characteristic of the smatterer rather than of the true scholar¹⁰. Great merit is sometimes concealed under the most unpromising appearances¹¹. Some talents are buried in the earth, and others are properly employed¹². Much mischief has often been prevented by timely consideration¹³. True pleasure cannot be tasted by the wicked; it is only to be found in the paths of virtue¹⁴. That† friend is highly to be valued at all times, whose friendship is shown in the time of our adversity¹⁵.

* *Learned* here, is an *adjective*; and should be pronounced *learn-ed* in two syllables; but when a *verb*, in one.

† Concerning *that*, see Notes p. 19, and *Key*, No. 20, s. 48.

EXERCISES,

Chiefly on the Passive Voice,—*continued.*

No. c.

Benevolence is accompanied with such an inward satisfaction, that the duty is sufficiently rewarded by the performance¹⁶. The mind should be stored with knowledge, and^p cultivated with care¹⁷. A pardon was obtained for him from the king¹⁸. Sanguine prospects have often been blasted¹⁹. Too sanguine hopes of any earthly thing should never be entertained²⁰. The table of Dionysius the tyrant was loaded with delicacies of every kind, yet he could not eat^a ²¹. We are taught in the Scriptures that the afflictions of this life will be overpaid by that eternal weight of glory which awaits the righteous^a ²².

Greater courage is displayed in ruling one's own spirit than in taking a city²³. Riches and honour have not always been reserved for the good²⁴. King Alfred is said to have divided the day and night into three parts: eight hours were allotted for meals and sleep, eight were allotted for business and recreation, and eight^p for study and devotion²⁵. All our actions should be regulated by religion and reason²⁶. The ship would have been swamped, and the whole crew lost, if the leak had not been discovered in time²⁷. These two things cannot be disjoined; a holy life and a happy death²⁸. As the thermometer cannot indicate temperature, when the mercury is frozen; so conscience cannot show us our duty, when hardened by sin²⁹.

37, bottom.

; an amiable
ived of rank
not of virtue
ts should be
. Many are
and dissipa-
n ruined by
recreations
and health-
be overcome
reserved and
eful disposi-
d should not

is charac-
n of the true
nes concealed
appearances¹¹.
h, and others
mischief has
nsideration¹².
the wicked;
s of virtue¹⁴.
d at all times,
time of our

announced learn-ed in

80, p. 44.

EXERCISES.

On different sorts of Verb in the Imperative.

No. *d.*

Forget the faults of others, and remember your own¹. Study universal rectitude, and cherish religious hope². Suit your desires to things, and not things to your desires³. Never lie, nor steal, nor covet, but always follow the law of truth, of integrity, and of contentment⁴. Practise humility, and avoid everything in dress, carriage, or conversation, which has any appearance of pride⁵. Allow nothing to interrupt your public or private devotions, except the performance of some humane action⁶.

Learn to contemn all praise betimes,
For flattery is the nurse of crimes⁷.

Recollect that you are a member of the human family; and deem nothing which^a regards humanity unworthy of your notice⁸. Presume^b not in prosperity, and despair^b not in adversity⁹. Be kind and courteous to all, and never either give or take offence without just reason¹⁰. Beware^b of the beginnings of evil habits; they creep^b upon us insidiously, and often become our masters before we are aware¹¹.

Oh man, degenerate man, offend no more!
Go* learn of brutes, thy Maker to adore¹²!

Let no one persuade you that the work of preparation for heaven is inconsistent with an honourable discharge of the duties of active life¹³. Let your words † agree with your thoughts, and let both be ruled by the law of the Lord¹⁴.

* Go and learn are both in the Imperative. — † See Note, next page.

EXERCISES

On different sorts of Verb in the Imperative,—*continued*.*

No. *d*.

Let the favour of God be preferred to the friendship of men, and the testimony of a good conscience to the applause of the world.¹⁵ Let your first waking thoughts be given to God; and let no evening close without a devout oblation of prayer and thanksgiving¹⁶.

Let no opposition or obloquy from men make you* swerve from your duty to God; the frowns of the world are nothing to the smiles of heaven¹⁷. Let reason go before enterprise, and counsel before every action¹⁸. Hear Ann read her lesson¹⁹. Bid her get it better²⁰. You need† not hear her again²¹. I see her weep²². I feel it pain me²³. I dare not go²⁴. You behold him run²⁵. We observed him walk off hastily²⁶.

And that tongue of his, that bade the Romans Mark* him, and write his speeches in their books, Alas! it cried—give²² me some drink, *Tullius*²⁷.

Deal with another as you'd have
Another* deal with you;
What; you're unwilling to receive,
Be sure you never do²⁸.

Be not overcome of evil, but overcome evil with good.²⁹ Be angry and sin not; let not the sun go down upon your wrath³⁰.

* The next verb after *bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel, let, behold observe, have, and know*, is in the *Infinitive*, having to understand: as, "The tempest-loving raven scarce dares (to) wing the dubious dusk." —I have known him (to) *divert* the money, &c. *To* is often used after the compound tenses of these verbs; as, Who will dare to advance, if I say—stop? Them did he make to pay tribute.

† Sent. 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, and 26, have no Imperative in them.

rative.

remember
itude, and
desires to
es³. Never
follow the
contentment⁴.
everything in
ch has any
ng to inter-
ons, except
tion⁶.

es,
7.
the human
regards hu-

Presume⁵
n adversity⁹.
never either
ason¹⁰. Be-
abits; they
ten become

more!
lore!¹²!
work of pre-
with an hon-
active life¹³.
ur thoughts,
f the Lord¹⁴.

Note, next page.

EXERCISES.

The Nominative, though generally placed *before* the verb, is often placed *after* it; especially when the sentence begins with *Here, there, &c.*, when *if* or *though* is understood, and when a question is asked.

No. e.

Of all burdens, the heaviest is a guilty conscience¹. Among the best and most healthful sports, may be reckoned bowls, curling, golf, and cricket; among the most dangerous, football and boating². Then were they in great fear³. Here stands the oak⁴. On the heels of folly treadeth shame, and at the back of anger standeth remorse⁵. Then shall thy light break forth as the morning⁶. Then shalt thou see clearly⁷. Where is thy brother⁸? Is he at home⁹?

There are in most of our great towns hundreds who can neither read nor write¹⁰. Were he at leisure, I would wait upon him¹¹. Had he been more prudent, he would have been more fortunate¹². Were they wise, they would read the Scriptures daily¹³. I would give more to the poor were I able¹⁴. Could we survey the chambers of sickness and distress, we should find them¹⁵ peopled, in very many instances, with the victims of intemperance, sensuality, and self indulgence¹⁶. Were he to assert it, would not believe it, because he told a lie before¹⁷. Gaming is a vice¹⁸ pregnant with the greatest evils; talents are often sacrificed to it, reputation, and everything virtuous and valuable¹⁹. Is not industry the road to wealth, and virtue to wellbeing²⁰?

EXERCISES.

The Nominative is often at a great distance from the verb.

No. f.

James Watt, who, by his invention of the steam-engine, conferred such inestimable benefits on his country and the world, was a man as remarkable for his modesty as for his genius¹. That fortitude which has encountered no dangers, that energy which has surmounted no difficulties, that integrity which has never been exposed to temptation,—can at best be considered but as gold not yet^o brought to the test, of which, therefore, the true value cannot be assigned².

It is quite possible that that little boy, so mean in his attire, and so peasant-like, in his look and manners, whom his richer and gayer schoolmates despise for his humble birth and homely aspect; seldom inviting him to share in their sports, and often treating him with disdain, and even with rudeness, as if he were the dust beneath their feet, may, by his superior talents and diligence, outstrip all of them in the race of learning, and ultimately rise to a position in society, which they, with all their advantages of birth, and wealth, and patronage, shall be unable to reach³. He whose constant employment is detraction and censure; who looks only to find faults, and speaks only to publish them; will be dreaded, hated, and avoided⁴.

He¹, who through vast immensity can pierce,
See worlds on worlds²* compose one universe,
Observe how system into system runs,
What³* other planets circle other suns,
What varied being peoples every star,
May tell why Heaven has made us as we are⁴

EXERCISES.

The infinitive, or part of a sentence, being equal to a noun, is often the nominative to a verb.

No. 9.

To be ashamed of a course of life which^a conscience approves from a fear of the censure of the world,^{*} is the mark of a feeble and imperfect character¹. To bear ill us ge with meekness, and misfortune with equanimity, bespeaks true nobility of soul². To rejoice in the welfare of our fellow-creatures, is, in a degree, to partake of their good fortune; but to repine at their prosperity, is only to punish ourselves, and prove how unworthy we are of the success which we envy³.

To eat bread in the sweat of his face, till he return unto the ground out of which he was taken, is part of the doom entailed on man by the fall⁴. To satisfy all his wishes, is the way to make your child² truly miserable⁵. To practise virtue is the sure way to love it⁶. To be at once merry and malicious, is the sign of a corrupt heart and a weak understanding⁷. To love them who love us is commendable; but to love our enemies, and do good to them that hate us, is the height of wisdom⁸. To instruct the ignorant, relieve the needy, and comfort the afflicted †, are duties which it is at once a privilege and a pleasure to perform⁹. To dread no eye, and suspect no tongue, is¹⁰ † the prerogative of innocence¹⁰.

* When nothing but an infinitive precedes the verb, then it is the infinitive that is the nominative to it: as, *To play* is pleasant. But when the infinitive has any adjuncts, as in the sentence, *To drink poison* is death, it is the whole clause that forms the nominative; for it is not *to drink* that is death; but *to drink poison*.

† Two or more infinitives usually require a verb in the plural. See also R. 18. b. †

EXERCISES.

Usually the relative *which* or *that* is the nominative to the verb, when it stands immediately before the verb.—When not close to the verb, it is usually in the objective, and governed either by the verb that comes *after* it, or by a preposition.*

No. *h.*

The lesson which you get with difficulty is longer remembered than that which you learn with ease¹. The veil which covers from our sight the sorrows of future years, is a veil^o which the hand of mercy has woven². Most of the misfortunes that befall us in life may be traced to vices or follies which we have committed³. Beware^d of those sins in youth which cause self-reproach in riper years⁴. True charity is not a meteor which occasionally glances, but a luminary which, in its orderly and regular course,* dispenses a benignant influence⁵.

We usually find that to be the sweetest fruit, which the birds have pecked⁶. Nothing can make that ^pgreat, which the decree of nature has ordained to be little⁷. The force that raises the lid of the tea-kettle, when the water is boiling, is the same which propels the mightiest steamship⁸. True religion will show its influence in every part of our conduct; it is like the sap[†] of a living tree, which pervades the most distant boughs⁹.

There is a tide in the affairs of men,
Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune¹⁰.

* An *adverb*, or an *adverbial phrase*, frequently comes between the relative and the verb.—The rule at the top is but a *general rule*; for in Poetry, in particular, the *Relative*, though not close to the verb, is sometimes in the nominative.—See first line of Poetry, page 65.

† *Sap*, the *obj.* governed by *to* understood after *like*, and antecedent to *which*.

EXERCISES.

When the antecedent and the relative are *both* in the *nominative*, the relative is generally the *nominative* to the verb *next* it, and the antecedent is the *nominative* to the *second* verb.

No. i.

He who performs every part of his business in its due place and season, suffers no part of time to escape without profit¹. He that does good for its own sake, seeks neither praise nor reward, though he is sure of both at the last². He that commends a wicked action, is equally guilty with him that commits it³. He that overcomes his passions, conquers his greatest enemies⁴. The consolation which is derived from a reliance upon Providence, enables us to support the most severe misfortunes⁵.

In our climate, fruit-trees which blossom late are surer to repay the gardener's care than those which blossom early⁶. The same sun that shone on your cradle, will shine on your grave⁷. A wrong which is inflicted on us unintentionally, leaves no room for resentment⁸. The objects which we most value, are not always those which are most valuable⁹. The impressions which we receive in youth are always deeper and more lasting than those of after-life¹⁰. Persons who are ingenuous and kind hearted in youth, but become selfish, morose, and miserly in old age, may be not unfitly likened to those mountains which have a carpet of verdure and flowers at their base, while their summit is covered with ice and snow¹¹.

EXERCISES.

What is equal to—that which—or the thing which—and represents two cases;—sometimes two *nominatives*;—sometimes two *objectives*;—sometimes a *nominative* and an *objective*;—and sometimes an *objective* and a *nominative*.—Sometimes it is an *adjective*.

No. j.

Regard the quality, rather than the quantity of what you read¹. If we delay till to-morrow what ought to be done to-day,^{p. 50, b.} we overcharge the to-morrow with a burden which belongs not to it². Choose what is most fit: custom will make it the most agreeable³. Foolish men are more apt to consider what they have lost, than what they possess, and to turn their eyes on those who are richer than themselves, rather than on those who are under greater difficulties⁴.

What cannot be cured, must be endured⁵. Attend to what you are about, and take pains to do it well⁶. *What a dolt not to know what part of speech *what* is⁷! Mark Antony, when under adverse circumstances, made this interesting remark, "I have lost all, except what I gave away⁸." Mark what it is his mind aims at in the question, and not merely what* words⁹ he utters⁹.

By what* means shall I obtain wisdom?
See what* a grace was seated on his brow¹⁰!

* *What* here, and generally in questions, is an *adjective*, like *many* in "many a flower." Sometimes it is an *Interjection*, as, *What!*

What is sometimes used as an *adverb* for *partly*: thus, *What* with thinking, *what* with writing, and *what* with reading, I am weary.

EXERCISES.

The compound relatives,—*whoever* and *whosoever*—are equal to
—*he who*.—See also page 18, last note.

Whatever and *whatsoever* are equal to—the *thing which*,—and,
like *what* on the preceding page, represent two cases.

No. k.

Whatever gives pain to your neighbour, ought to cause pain to yourself¹. Whoever tells you your faults from a desire for your amendment, is your true friend and benefactor². Whatsoever is good, that you should do³. Wherever you are, and in *whatever circumstances you are placed, remember that the eye of God is upon you⁴. Whosoever committeth sin, transgresseth also the law; for sin is the transgression of the law⁵. Whatever is worth doing, is worth doing well⁶.

* By whatever arts you may at first attract the attention, you can hold the esteem, and secure the hearts of others, only by amiable dispositions, and the accomplishments of the mind⁷.

Whatever brawls disturb the street,
There should be peace at home⁸.

Good advice, by whomsoever given, should be thankfully followed; and enticements to evil should be strenuously resisted, whatever the attractions of the enticer⁹. *Whatever insult you receive, try to bear it meekly: revenge it in no circumstances whatever¹⁰.

* *Whatever* is an adjective here, for it qualifies arts, &c.; and where no noun is after it, it agrees with *thing* understood. Thus, *Whatever* may be the motive, &c., that is, *Whatever thing* may be.

Do,
ve
ve

F
ised
ness
of n
virt
Tho
the
agai
do y
tell
Did
I do
is th
the
long
wha
dom
P
the n
afflic
allev
give
passi
well
I ha
ques

* H
have t

EXERCISES.

Do, did, have, had, are auxiliary verbs when joined to another verb; when not joined to another verb, they are principal verbs, and, like the verb *to love*, have auxiliaries.

No. 1.

He who does not perform what he has promised, is a traitor to his friend¹. Earthly happiness does not flow from riches; but from content of mind, health of body, and a life of piety and virtue². Fine clothes do not make a gentleman³. Though you have not yet succeeded in taking the prize, do not be discouraged from trying again⁴. If you have not done all you could, why do you wonder at your failure⁵? John did not tell me that he had gained the gold medal⁶. Did you see my book⁷? Do you go to-morrow⁸? I do not think it⁹ proper to play too long⁹. What is this that thou hast done¹⁰? Had they studied the map, they might have saved themselves a long journey¹¹. Do not lightly throw away what you have gained with difficulty¹². Wisdom does not make a man¹³ proud¹³.

Principal.—He who does the most good,* has the most pleasure¹⁴. Instead of adding to the afflictions of others, do whatever^k you can to alleviate them¹⁵. To him that hath shall be given¹⁶. If thou canst do anything, have^a compassion on us, and help^d us¹⁷. He did his work well¹⁸. Silver and gold have I none; but such as I have give I thee¹⁹. Did you do what I requested you to do²⁰?

* *Have, hast, has, hath, had, and hadst,* are auxiliaries only when they have the Pass.Participle of another verb after them.

EXERCISES.

The verb *to be* has very often an *adjective* after it; and some adjectives seem so closely combined with it, as to lead young people to suppose that they have got a passive verb.

No. m.

Piety and rectitude are productive of true peace and comfort¹. If the powers of the mind were duly cultivated,* mankind would at all times be able to derive pleasure from their own breasts, as rational as it is exalted². Learning is preferable to riches; but virtue is preferable to both³. Men who are severe in judging themselves are usually charitable to the faults of others⁴. We were all afraid of the lions⁵: for we heard them^{2 d*} roar⁶. A man may be well instructed without being also instructive⁷.

Although ten were eligible, only one was chosen⁸. To study without intermission is impossible: relaxation is necessary; but it should be moderate⁹. The Athenians were conceited on account of their own wit, science, and politeness¹⁰. We are indebted to our ancestors for our civil and religious liberty¹¹. Gold would be less valued, if it were more abundant¹². An idle person is a kind of monster in the creation, because all nature is busy about him¹³. Be careful to speak with reverence of all that is sacred¹⁴. He was unfortunate, because he was inconsiderate¹⁵. He who is self-confident is less likely to excel than he who is conscious of his deficiencies¹⁶. I am ashamed of you¹⁷. She is quite forlorn¹⁸.

* Were cultivated, Passive voice.

1. Participle

2. Adjective that,

1. ing

spec

hear

been

a let

She

We

ther

lear

be b

day

2.

good

Thos

frien

obst

who

unde

able

the

but

dilig

Of a

Som

activ

EXERCISES.

1. A verb may be conjugated with its *Active* or *Incomplete Participle*, joined to the verb *to be*.^{*}—See page 40.

2. A noun is always understood, when not expressed, after Adjectives and Indefinite Pronouns: such as, *few, many, this, that, all, each, every, either*.—See page 147, under *They, those*.

No. *n*.

1. While I am reading you should be listening to what I read¹. He was delivering his speech when I left the house². They have been hearing a lecture on botany³. He might have been preparing his lesson⁴. I have been writing a letter, and I am just going to send it away⁵. She was walking by herself when I met her⁶. We are perishing with hunger; I am willing therefore to surrender⁷. We should always be learning⁸. A good man is always studying to be better⁹. We were playing at cricket yesterday¹⁰.

2. Those *only* are truly great who are really good¹¹. Few set a proper value on their time¹². Those who⁴ despise the admonitions of their friends, deserve the mischiefs which⁵ their own obstinacy brings upon them¹³. Of the many who contended for the prize, most were quite undeserving of it, and only a few made a tolerable appearance, though each expected to be the successful competitor¹⁴. Love no interests but those of truth and virtue¹⁵. Such as are diligent will be rewarded¹⁶. I saw a thousand¹⁷. Of all prodigality, that of time is the worst¹⁸. Some are naturally timid; and some bold and active; for all are not alike¹⁹.

* Many words both in *ing* and *ed* are mere adjectives.

EXERCISES.

The *Passive* or *Complete Participle* has uniformly either a relative or a personal pronoun, with some part of the verb to *be*, understood before it.*

No. 0.

Make the study of the sacred Scriptures^p your daily concern; and embrace the doctrines (*which are*) contained in them, as the real oracles of Heaven, and the dictates of that Spirit that cannot lie¹. Knowledge softened with modesty and good breeding, will make a man beloved and admired². Gratitude and thanks are the least returns which children can make to their parents for the numberless obligations conferred on them³. Precepts have little influence when not enforced by example⁴. He is of all human beings the happiest, who has a conscience untainted† by guilt, and a mind so well regulated† as to be able to accommodate itself to whatever the wisdom of Heaven shall think fit to ordain⁵. Mere external beauty is of little estimation; and deformity, when associated with amiable dispositions and useful qualities, does not preclude our respect and approbation⁶. True honour, as defined by Cicero, is the concurrent approbation of good men⁷. Modesty seldom resides in a breast not enriched with nobler virtues⁸.

* It is often difficult to supply the *right* part of the verb to *be*. An *adverb* is often understood. The *scope* of the passage must determine what part of *to be*, and what *adverb*, when an *adv.* is necessary, should be supplied: for no general rule for this can be given.

† The *Past Tense* has always a *nom.* either expressed or easily understood: but the *Pass. Part.* has no *Nom.*—See *Key*, p. 81. No. 163

Untainted and *regulated* are adjectives here

A
app
he
nitu
less
conc
and
the

W
has
that
Brita
coun
by i
labor
impr
near

* See
† In
Partic
Infinit
follows
See Syr

EXERCISES,

On the *Passive* or *Complete Participle*,—*continued*.

No. b.

An elevated genius, employed in little things, appears like the sun in his evening declination; he remits his splendour, but retains his magnitude; and pleases more, though he dazzles less⁹. Economy, prudently and temperately conducted, is the safeguard of many virtues; and is, in a particular manner, favourable to the exercise of benevolence¹⁰.

The lovely young Lavinia once had friends,
And fortune smiled deceitful² on her birth;
For, in her helpless years, deprived of all,
Of every stay, save* innocence and Heaven,
She, with her widow'd mother, feeble, old,
And poor, lived in a cottage, far retired
Among the windings of a woody vale;
By solitude and deep surrounding shades,
But more by bashful modesty concealed¹¹.

We find man^p placed † in a world where he has by no means the disposal of the events that happen¹². Protected by its floating walls, Britain is safer from invasion than many a country which has its whole frontier barricaded by impregnable fortresses. Children often labour more to have the words in their books † imprinted on their memories, than to have the meaning † fixed in their minds¹⁴.

* Save may be considered a *preposition* here.—See *Key*, No. 140.

† In many cases, the infinitive *to be*, is understood before the *Pass. Participle*. Though the verb that follows *have, dare, &c.*, is in the *Infinitive*, *to is inadmissible*, and where *to is inadmissible*, the *be* that follows it is inadmissible also.—Man *to be placed*—Means *to be left, &c.* See *Syn. R. 6.*

EXERCISES.

Supply all the words that are *understood*. The infinitive *to be* or *to have*, is often understood.—Not supplying what is understood after *than* and *as*, is frequently the cause of error.

No. p.

Disdain^d every form of falsehood, nor allow even the image of deceit a place in your mind¹. Some who seem born only to serve others rise by their integrity and fidelity to places of command; and some who commence life with all the advantages of birth and fortune, forfeit their position by their vices, and find themselves reduced in after-life to servitude or beggary². They lost their mother when very young³.

For contemplation he, and valour formed;

For softness she, and sweet attractive grace⁴.

Is not her husband elder than she⁵? Thy brother is a more diligent student than thou⁶. We were earlier at church than they⁷. I have more to do than he⁸. He is as diligent as his brother⁹. I love you as well as him¹⁰. How opposite in their worldly circumstances were these two—Dives and Lazarus—the one rich, the other poor; the one clothed in purple and fine linen, the other in rags; the one faring sumptuously every day, the other desiring to be fed with the crumbs which fell from the rich man's table; yet, though Dives in his lifetime received his good things, and Lazarus evil things, the latter had really the better portion, and the former the worse; for in the world beyond the grave the beggar was to be comforted, and the rich man tormented¹¹.

1
relati
2
parsin

1
best
refle
mak
flow
the
to lo
bad
our
we
their
fortu
the v
regu
She
write
that

The
from
or vi

I exp
tion
and r

EXERCISES.

1. The objective after a *transitive* verb, especially when a relative, is often understood.

2. Sometimes the antecedent is omitted, and then it must in parsing be supplied.

No. 9.

1. He that moderates his desires, enjoys the best happiness this world can afford¹. Few reflections are more distressing than those we make on our own ingratitude². The modest flower we overlook is often more fragrant than the flaunting one we admire³. It is not easy to love those we do not esteem⁴. Our good or bad fortune depends on the choice we make of our friends⁵. Over-anxiety to avoid the evils we dread only makes us a broader mark for their sharp arrows; and not a few of our misfortunes are brought on, or at least accelerated, by the very means we use to avert them⁶. He eats regularly, drinks moderately, and reads often⁷. She sees and hears distinctly, but she cannot write⁸. Lay up a part of what you daily acquire, that you may have to give to him that is poor⁹.

2. There are in this loud stunning tide
Of human care and crime,
With whom the melodies abide
Of the everlasting chime¹⁰.

There have been that have delivered themselves from their misfortunes by their good conduct or virtue¹¹.

Who live to nature rarely can be poor;

Who live to fancy rarely can be rich¹².

Who steals my purse steals trash¹³,

I expect you to make progress in your education in proportion to the advantages you have, and not according to those you have not¹⁴.

EXERCISES.

1. The objective generally comes *after* the verb that governs it: but always when it is a *relative*, and often in other instances, it comes *before* it.

2. When two objectives follow a verb, the *thing* is governed by the *verb*, and the *person* by a *preposition* understood.

No. 1.

1. Me ye have bereaved of my children¹. Them that serve me faithfully I will reward². Mine* offence I trust you will forgive³. Him whom ye recommend I shall prefer⁴. Those that kindly reprov'd you, ye basely insulted⁵. Those who have laboured to make us wise and good, are the persons whom we ought particularly to love and respect⁶. Whom having not seen ye love⁷. Those curiosities we have imported from China; these from Japan⁸. The two letters I now give you are letters of introduction:—this you may send by post; that you must deliver in person⁹.

2 Give him bread¹⁰. Give her her due¹¹. Who gave you that book¹²? My father has sent me a valuable present¹³. Friend, † lend me thy horse¹⁴. Give her assistance¹⁵. Buy me a pair of globes¹⁶. Teach thy sister the alphabet¹⁷. Sell me meat for money¹⁸. I will send you corn¹⁹. Tell me thy name²⁰. He taught me grammar²¹. If any of thy friends offend thee, tell him his fault, and try to convince him of it²². Bring me a candle²³. Get him a pen²⁴. Write him a letter²⁵. Tell me nothing but the truth²⁶.

* Mine, used here for my, as thine is for thy. See Observations, p. 17.

† Friend is the nominative, for he is named. Supply the ellipsis thus. O thou who art my friend, lend me, &c.

EXERCISES.

1. The poets often use an *adjective* as a *noun*; and sometimes join an *adjective* to their new-made noun.
2. They sometimes improperly use an *adjective* for an *adverb*.
3. Though the *adjective* generally comes *before* the noun, it is sometimes placed *after* it.

No. 3.

1. And where He *vital* breathes there must be joy¹.
 — Who shall attempt with wandering feet
 The dark, unbottom'd, infinite abyss,
 And through the *palpable* OBSCURE find out
 His uncouth way, or spread his aery flight,
 Upborne with indefatigable wings,
 Over the *vast* ABRUPT, ere he arrive*
 The happy isle²?—*Paradise Lost*, b. ii. 404.
2. Thus Adam his illustrious guest besought:
 And thus the god-like angel answer'd *mild*³.
 The lovely young Lavinia oncè had friends,
 And fortune smiled *deceitful* on her birth⁴.
 When even at last the solemn hour shall come
 To wing my mystic flight to future worlds,
 I *cheerful* will obey; there, with new powers,
 Will rising wonders sing⁵.
 The rapid radiance *instantaneous* strikes
 The illumined mountain⁶.—*Gradual* sinks the
 Into a perfect calm⁷. [breeze
 Each animal, conscious of some danger, fled
Precipitate the loath'd abode of man⁸.
3. But I lose myself in Him, in light *ineffable*⁹.
 — Pure serenity apace
 Induces thought and contemplation *still*¹⁰.

* The poets often very improperly omit the *preposition*. It should be, "Ere he arrive *at* the happy isle." And again, ² Here he had need all circumspection, for, need of all circumspection.

³ After this, the Preface, the Exercises on Punctuation, p. 159, and the Figures of Speech, p. 172, with many other parts of the Grammar, may be used as additional exercises on Parsing.

*A short Explanation of some of the Terms used
in the Grammar.*

- Abbreviation*, shortening.
Affirmative, yes, asserting.
Ambiguity, double meaning.
Anneæd, joined to.
Antecedent, the word going before.
Auxiliary, helping.
Cardinal,* principal, or fundamental.
Comparative, a higher or lower degree of a quality.
Comparison, a comparing of qualities.
Conjugate, to give all the principal parts of a verb.
Contingency, what may or may not happen; casualty, accident.
Copulative, joining.
Defective, wanting some of its parts.
Demonstrative, pointing out.
Disjunctive, disjoining.
Distributive, dividing into portions.
Ellipsis, a leaving out of something.
Euphony, an agreeable sound.
Future, } time to come.
Futurity, }
Governs, rules or acts upon.
Imperative, commanding.
Indefinite, undefined, not limited.
Indicative, declaring, indicating.
Infinitive, without limits.
Interrogative, asking.
Intervens, to come between.
Intransitive (action), confined to the actor; passing within.
Irrregular, not according to rule.
Miscellaneous, mixed, of various kinds.
Mood, form or manner of a verb.
- Negative*, no, denying.
Nominative, naming.
Objective, applied to the case which follows an active verb or a preposition.
Obsolete, gone out of use.
Obsolescent, growing out of use.
Omit, to leave out, not to do.
Ordinal,† numbered in their order.
Paradigm, example.
Participle, partaking of other parts.
Past, the time past.
Perfect, completed, finished, past.
Personal, belonging to persons.
Pluperfect, more than perfect, quite finished some time ago.
Plurality, more than one.
Possessive, possessing, belonging to.
Positive, the quality without excess.
Preceding, going before.
Prefixing, placing before.
Present, the time that now is.
Promiscuous, mixed.
Query, question.
Regular, according to rule.
Relative, relating to another.
Subjunctive, joined to another under a condition.
Superlative, the highest or lowest degree of a quality.
Tense, time of being, acting, or suffering.
Transitive, passing to an object.
Unity, one—several acting as one.
Universal, extending to all.

* The *Cardinal numbers* are, One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, &c.; from the first three are formed the adverbs *once*, *twice*, *thrice*.

† The *Ordinal numbers* are, First, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second, &c.

From these come *adverbs of order*; as, *Firstly*, *secondly*, *thirdly*, *fourthly*, *fifthly*, *sixthly*, *seventhly*, *eighthly*, *ninthly*, *tenthly*, *eleventhly*, *twelfthly*, *thirteenthly*, *fourteenthly*, *fifteenthly*, *sixteenthly*, *seventeenthly*, *eighteenthly*, *nineteenthly*, *twentiethly*, *twenty-firstly*, *twenty-secondly*, &c.

SYNTAX.

SYNTAX *treats of the proper arrangement and construction of words in sentences.**

A *sentence* is an assemblage of words making complete sense; as, *God made the world.*

Sentences are either simple, compound, or complex.

A *simple* sentence contains but one subject and one finite† verb; as, *Life is short.*

A *compound* sentence contains two or more simple sentences connected by a co-ordinative conjunction; as, *Time is short, BUT eternity is long.*

A *complex* sentence contains one principal clause, and one or more subordinate clauses; as, *Life is a stream, on which drift flowers in spring.*

The principal parts of a simple sentence‡ are, the *subject* (or nominative), the *predicate* (or verb), and the *object*.

The *subject* is the thing spoken of; the *predicate* is the thing affirmed or denied; and the *object* is the thing acted upon by the subject.

* Syntax principally consists of two parts, *Concord* and *Government*. *Concord* is the agreement which one word has with another, in number, gender, case, or person.

Government is that power which one part of speech has over another in determining its mood, tense, or case.

† *Finite* verbs are those to which number and person appertain. The *Infinitive* mood has no respect to number or person.

‡ The subject of "Analysis of Sentences" is treated fully in the APPENDIX, p. 181.

RULE I. *A verb must agree with its nominative in number and person; as, Thou readest; he reads; we read.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

The birds sing sweetly.* Thou art the man. Of the metals platinum is the heaviest, gold the most prized, iron the most useful. The train of my ideas was interrupted. Almost thou persuaded me to be a Christian. In spring the ice melts and the fields become green. The number of pupils that attend our school has greatly increased since last session.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

I loves reading. I is going to London. A clear† and approving conscience make an easy mind. There remains three things more to be considered. His conduct in public and private life entitle him to the esteem of his friends. By good conduct thou might engage fortune on thy side. Frequent commission of crimes harden the heart. The Pyramids of Egypt has stood more than three thousand years. A judicious arrangement of studies facilitate improvement. A variety of pleasing objects charm the eye. Nothing but vain and foolish pursuits delight some persons.
‡ Him and her were of the same age.

* Example of Construction:—The *birds sing*, a verb agrees with its nominative. *Thou art*, a verb agrees with its nominative.—See first note, next page; also full example of Construction, p. 120.

† Rule. *An adjective agrees with a noun in gender, number, and case; as, A good man.*—As the adjective, in English, is not varied on account of gender, number, and case, this rule is of little importance.

‡ Rule. *The subject of a verb should be in the nominative:* Thus, Him and her were married; should be, *He and she* were married.

☛ All those Notes at the bottom that have *Exercises* in the text are to be committed to memory and applied like the rules at the top.

RULE II. *A transitive verb governs the objective case; as, We love him; he loves us.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

* He enjoined me to tell the whole truth, and I obeyed him. If thou bring her to school, I will teach her and reward thee. Whom do you think I found in the garden? Me thou hast deceived by breaking the promise which thou madest.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He loves we. He and they we know, but who art thou? Let thou and I the battle try.

Esteeming † theirselves wise, they become fools. Upon seeing I he turned pale.

Who did you bring with you? They are the persons who ‡ we ought to respect.

§ Repenting him of his design he hastened him back. It will be very difficult to agree his conduct with the principles he professes.

|| I shall premise with two or three general observations. He ingratiates himself with some. by traducing others.

* The pupil may construe thus:—*He enjoined*, a verb agrees with its nominative—*enjoined me*, an active verb governs the objective case—*I obeyed*, a verb agrees with its nominative—*obeyed him*, an active verb governs the objective case—and so on in going through the Rules of Syntax, the pupil applying such of them as bear upon the Exercises, or only the individual Rule under which the lesson stands.

† The participle governs the same case with the verb.

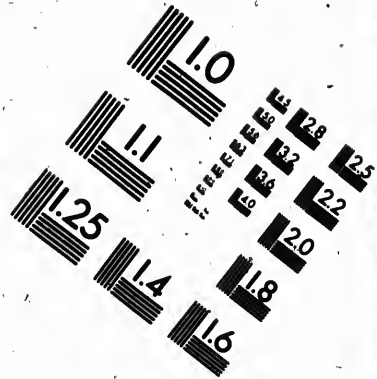
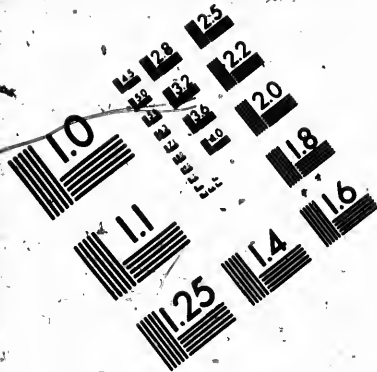
‡ Note. *When the objective is a relative, it comes before the verb that governs it.* (See No. h, p. 67.)

Sometimes the objective after a transitive verb is a clause; as, I know—*what that is.*—(See last Note, p. 101.)

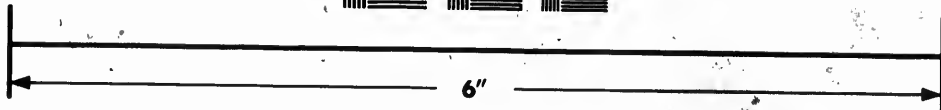
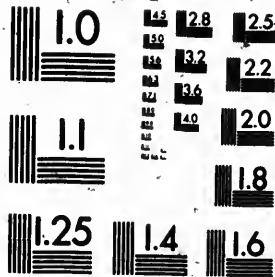
§ Rule I. *Intransitive verbs do not admit of an objective after them, except in the case of nouns of cognate meaning; as, to die the death, to live a life. In he walked a mile, he slept an hour, mile and hour are objectives of space and time; or are governed by a preposition understood.*

|| Rule II. *Transitive verbs do not admit of a preposition after them: Thus, I must premise with three circumstances, should be, I must premise three circumstances.*





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

E 28 25
E 32 22
E 20
18

10

RULE III. *Prepositions govern the objective case; as, To whom much is given, of him much shall be required.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED,

To whom did you send the money? On me, not on her, let the blame fall. John and I went to sea on the same day; but he outstripped me in seamancraft, and got the command of a ship before me. Water rises in vapour from the sea, forms clouds in the air, and then falls in showers on the earth.

Earth's highest station ends in "Here he lies."

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Will you go with I? Withhold not good from they to who it is due. Who do you live with? Great friendship subsists between he and I. They willingly, and of theirselves, endeavoured to make up the difference. He laid the blame upon somebody, I know not who, in the company.

* Who do you speak to? Who dost thou serve under? Flattery can hurt none, but those who it is agreeable to. It is not I who thou are engaged with. Who didst thou receive that intelligence from?

† He is quite unacquainted with, and consequently cannot speak upon, that subject.

* Rule I. *The preposition should be placed immediately before the relative which it governs; as, To whom do you speak?*

The preposition is often separated from the relative; but though this is perhaps allowable in familiar conversation, yet, in solemn composition, the placing of the preposition immediately before the relative is more perspicuous and elegant.

† Rule II. *It is inelegant to connect two prepositions, or one and a transitive verb, with the same noun; for example, They were refused entrance into, and forcibly driven from, the house; should be, They were refused entrance into the house, and were forcibly driven from it. — I wrote to, and warned him; should be, I wrote to him and warned him.*

‡ *Prepositions sometimes govern a phrase; as, For want of attending to his duty he lost his place.*

RULE IV. *Two or more singular nominatives, coupled with AND, require a verb and pronoun in the plural; as, James and John are good boys; for they are busy.**

Two or more singular nominatives separated by OR or NOR, require a verb and pronoun in the singular; as, James or John is dux.†

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Demosthenes and Cicero were the greatest orators of antiquity. Faith, hope, and charity, are the three chief graces of the gospel. Town or country is equally agreeable to me. Neither the captain nor the pilot has yet come on board. The king as well as the beggar is mortal. It is either my uncle or my aunt that has sent me this gift. Intemperance slays more men in a week, than the sword or the musket does in a month. Is the lark or the thrush the better singer?

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He and I meets often. Life and death is in the power of the tongue. The time and place for the conference was agreed on. Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing.

Neither precept nor discipline are so forcible as example. Either the boy or the girl were present. It must be confessed that a lampoon or a satire do not carry in them robbery or murder. Man is not such a machine as a clock or a watch, which move merely as they are moved.

* And is the only conjunction that binds the agency of two or more into one; for, as well as, never does that; but merely states a sort of comparison; thus, "Cæsar, as well as Cicero, was eloquent." With is sometimes used for and.—See *Miscellaneous Obs.* pp. 143 and 144.

† Or and nor are the only conjunctions applicable to this rule.

RULE V. *Conjunctions couple the same moods and tenses of verbs ; as, Do good and seek peace. Conjunctions couple the same cases of nouns and pronouns ; as, He and I are happy.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

The prisoner was tried, but acquitted. He will neither go himself nor allow me to go. Scripture commands us to fear God and honour the king. Strike, but hear me. The master called up you, Harry, and me : he punished you and him, but not me. The man who reads God's word and obeys it, is a godly man.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He reads and wrote well. He or me must go. My brother and him are tolerable grammarians. If he understands the subject, and attend to it, he can scarcely fail of success. Did he not tell thee his fault, and entreated* thee to forgive him? And dost thou, a pious man, live in extravagance, and bringest* me who am one of thy creditors to ruin? Professing regard, and to act differently, mark a base mind. If a man professes a regard for the duties of religion, and neglect those of morality, that man's religion is vain.

† Rank may confer influence, but will not necessarily produce virtue. He is not rich, but † is respectable. Our season of improvement is short; and, whether used or not, † will soon pass away.

* The same form of the verb must be continued.

† Conjunctions frequently couple different moods and tenses of verbs; but in these instances the nominative is generally repeated; as, He may return, but he will not continue.

‡ The nominative is generally repeated, even to the same mood and tense, when a contrast is stated with *but, not, or though, &c.*, as in this sentence.

RULE VI. *One verb governs another in the infinitive mood; as, Forget not to do good.**

To, the sign of the infinitive, is not used after the verbs bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel, let, perceive, behold, observe, have, and know. †

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

The tenant was ordered to leave the farm. It is more blessed to give than to receive. I have no wish to travel. Make the multitude sit down. I dare not tell a lie. Bid him sheathe the sword and spare his country. I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven. I saw him fire the gun. He was seen to fire the gun.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

They obliged him do it. We ought forgive injuries. It is better live on a little, than outlive a great deal.

They need not to call upon her. I dare not to proceed so hastily. I have seen some young persons to conduct themselves very discreetly. We heard the thunder to roll. The thunder was heard roll over our heads. I bid my steward to do his duty, and he doeth it. The sound made him to tremble. He was made tremble by the sound.

* The infinitive mood is frequently governed by nouns and adjectives; as, They have a desire to learn; worthy to be loved. For, before the infinitive, is unnecessary.

Let governs the objective case; as, Let him beware.

† To is generally used after the Passive of these verbs, except let; as, He was made to believe it; he was let go; and sometimes after the active, in the past tense, especially of have, a principal verb; as, I had to walk all the way.—See p. 63, b.

The infinitive is often independent of the rest of the sentence; as, To proceed; to confess the truth, I was in fault.

RÔLE VII. *When one noun qualifies another, it is generally in the possessive case; as, John's book; on eagles' wings.*

When two nouns come together signifying the same thing, they agree in case, and are said to be in apposition; as, Cicero the orator.

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

I have a copy of Shakspeare's plays. Invalids are sometimes ordered to drink asses' milk. Lennie's Grammar was printed in Oliver and Boyd's printing-office.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Pompey's pillar. A mothers tenderness and a fathers care, are natures gifts for mans advantage. For Jesus Christ his sake.

* Peter's, John's, and Andrew's occupation was that of fishermen. He asked his father, as well as his mother's advice.

Moses† rod. For conscience's sake.

* *Rule.* *When several nouns come together in the possessive case, the apostrophe with s is annexed to the last, and understood to the rest; as, Jane and Lucy's books.*

When any words intervene, the sign of the possessive should be annexed to each; as, This gained the king's, as well as the people's approbation.

† To prevent too much of the hissing sound, the *s* after the apostrophe is generally omitted when the *first* noun has an *s* in each of its two last syllables, and the second noun begins with *s*; as, *Righteousness' sake*, *For conscience' sake*, *Francis' sake*: but we say, *The witness's sake*.

It has lately become common, when the nominative singular ends in *s* or *ss*, to form the possessive by omitting the *s* after the apostrophe; as, *James' book*, *Miss' shoes*, instead of *James's book*, *Miss's shoes*. This is improper. Put these phrases into questions, and then they will appear ridiculous. Is this book *James'*? Are these shoes *Miss'*? Nor are they less ridiculous without the interrogatory form; as, This book is *James'*, &c.—K. 185-8-7.

We sometimes use *of* instead of the *apostrophe* and *s*; thus we say, *The wisdom of Socrates*, rather than *Socrates's wisdom*. In some instances we use the *of* and the possessive termination too; as, It is a discovery of *Sir Isaac Newton's*, that is, one of *Sir Isaac Newton's* discoveries. A picture of my friend, means a *portrait* of him: But a picture of my *friend's*, means a *portrait* of some other person, and that it belongs to my friend.

As precise rules for the formation of the possessive case, in all situa-

RULE VIII. *When a Collective noun conveys unity of idea, the verb and pronoun should be singular; as, The class was large.**

When a noun of multitude conveys plurality of idea, the verb and pronoun should be plural; as, The people of Great Britain enjoy privileges of which they ought to be proud.

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

The meeting was well attended. The congregation met, but were soon dismissed. When the nation complains, the rulers should listen to its voice. His family is neglected, and his friends are disgusted. What an immense fleet—it fills the whole bay: no harbour in the world could contain it.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

The court of Spain have often done very foolish things. The flock, and not the fleece, are, or ought to be, the object of the shepherd's care. The regiment consist of a thousand men. The Parliament are dissolved. The fleet were seen sailing up the channel. This generation are far more intelligent than the last. The shoal of herrings were immense. The remnant of the people were persecuted. The army are marching to Cadiz. Some said the navy were sufficiently strong, others said they were not.

Examples can scarcely be given, I shall merely subjoin a few correct examples for the pupil's imitation; thus, I left the parcel at *Smith's* the bookseller; The Lord Mayor of London's authority; For David thy *father's* sake; He took refuge at the *governor's* the *king's* representative; Whose glory did he emulate? He emulated *Cæsar's*, the greatest general of antiquity.—See last note under Rule XII, also Rule XXX.

* Which, and not *she*, is applied to collective nouns.—See p. 153. *mid*

RULE IX. *The verb TO BE should have the same case after it that it has before it ; as, I am he ; I understood it to be him.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

It is I. Whom did your tutor take me to be ? Were I he, I would act a very different part. His fellow-soldiers declared him to be a coward. Thou shalt be governor over my house, and thy word shall be law to my servants. Their motto was, "No surrender." When they saw him walking upon the sea, they supposed him a spirit. Simon was surnamed Peter.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

It was me who wrote the letter. It was him who got the first prize. I am sure it was not us that did it. It was them who gave us all this trouble. I would not act the same part again, if I were him. Though he was suspected of forging a letter, yet it could not be him, for he never could write his own name.

Let him be whom he may, I am not afraid of him. Who do you think him to be ? Whom think ye that she is ? Was it me that said so ? I am certain it was not him. It was either him or his brother that got the first prize.

* When the verb to be is understood, it has the same case after it that it has before it ; as, He seems the leader of a party. I supposed him a man of learning : that is, to be the leader, &c., to be a man, &c.

Part of a sentence is sometimes the nominative both before and after the verb to be ; as, His maxim was, "Be master of thy anger."

The verb to be is often followed by an adjective.—See No. m.

Passive verbs which signify naming, and some neuter verbs, have a nominative after them ; as, He shall be called John. He became the slave of irregular passions. Stephen died a martyr for the Christian religion.

When the Active voice admits of two objects, one of them may be retained in the Passive ; as, His father offered John an apple. John was offered an apple by his father.

RULE X. Sentences that imply contingency and futurity require the Subjunctive Mood; as, *If he be alone, give him the letter.*

When contingency and futurity are not BOTH implied, the Indicative ought to be used; as, If he speaks as he thinks, he may safely be trusted.

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

If he acquire riches, he may find that he is no happier than before. Though he fall from his horse, I trust he will not be hurt. Let him that standeth take heed lest he fall. If he follows the course he has promised to take, he is sure to succeed.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

If children are neglected till vice has become habitual to them, they are hardly ever reformed afterwards. Though he be in an elevated station, yet he is never proud. If thou be a Christian, act like one. If he does promise, he will certainly perform. Oh! that his heart was tender.

* Despise not any condition, lest it happens to be thy own. Take care that thou breakest not any of the established rules.

† If he does but intimate his desire, it will produce obedience. If he be but in health, I am content. If he but asks to be forgiven, his father will pardon him.

* Rule I. Lest and that annexed to a command requires the Subjunctive Mood; as, Shun bad company, lest you be ensnared and ruined. Avoid suretyship, that you may not lose your money and your friend.

† Rule II. If, with but following it, when futurity is denoted, requires the Subjunctive Mood; as, If a boy but try to learn, he will succeed. But when future time is not expressed, the Indicative ought to be used.

In the subjunctive, the auxiliaries shall, should, &c., are generally understood; as, Though he fall, i. e. though he should fall. Until reflection composes his mind, i. e. until reflection shall compose. See K. 256.

RULE XI. *Some adverbs and conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions ; thus,*

<i>Neither</i> requires <i>Nor</i> after it ; as, <i>Neither</i> he nor his brother was in.	
<i>Though</i> <i>Yet</i> ; as, <i>Though</i> he is poor, <i>yet</i> he is respectable.	
<i>Whether</i> <i>Or</i>	<i>Whether</i> he will do it or not, I cannot tell.
<i>Either</i> <i>Or</i> *	<i>Either</i> she or her sister must go.
<i>As</i> <i>As</i>	Mine is <i>as</i> good <i>as</i> yours.
<i>As</i> <i>So</i>	<i>As</i> thy diligence, <i>so</i> shall thy success be
<i>So</i> †..... <i>As</i>	He is not <i>so</i> wise <i>as</i> his brother.
<i>So</i> <i>That</i>	I am <i>so</i> weak <i>that</i> I cannot walk.

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.
Teach us so to number our days, as to apply our hearts unto wisdom. Is he as good a reader as you? You can go to London either by land or by sea. As the tides obey the moon, so should our passions bend to our judgment. Whether we live or die, we are the Lord's. Neither hath this man sinned, nor his parents. He ran so fast, that I could not overtake him.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

It is neither cold or hot. The one is equally deserving as the other. I must be so candid to own, that I have been mistaken. He was so angry as he could not speak. He is not as faithful and trustworthy as I could wish him to be. Neither despise the poor, or envy the rich. As far as I am able to judge, the book is well written. Though she was poor, she was not discontented.

* The poets frequently use *Or—or*, for *Either—or* ; and *Nor—nor* for *Neither—nor*.—In prose *not—nor* is often used for *neither—nor*.—The *yet* after *though* is frequently and properly suppressed.

† *Or* does not require *either* before it when the one word is a mere explanation of the other ; as, 20s., or £1 sterling, is enough.

! See K. No. 204.

RULE XII. *The verbal abstract in -ing, being an abstract noun, takes Thé before it, and Of after it; as, The sum of the moral law consists in the obeying of God, and the loving of our neighbour as ourselves.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

By the exercising of our faculties we improve them. The preparing of the necessary materials requires time. Your voice is drowned by the rushing of the waters. The sea rose with the rising of the wind.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

By observing of these rules, you may avoid mistakes. This was a betraying the trust reposed in him. The not attending to this rule is the cause of a very common error.

† Our approving their bad conduct may encourage them to become worse. Your sending of an answer will oblige. ‡ What is the reason of this person's dismissing of his servant so hastily ?

* These phrases would be right, were *the* and *of* both omitted; as, The sum of the moral law consists in *obeying* God and *loving* our neighbour, &c. In this case, *obeying* and *loving* are gerunds, or gerundial infinitives. In some cases, however, these two modes express very different ideas, and therefore attention to the *sense* is necessary; as, He confessed the whole in the *hearing* of three witnesses, and the court spent an hour in *hearing* their deposition.—Key, No. 208, &c.

† *The verbal abstract with a possessive before it generally dispenses with Of after it; as, Their observing the rules prevented errors. By his studying the Scriptures he became wise.*

When a preposition follows the form in -ing, of is inadmissible; as, His depending on promises proved his ruin. His neglecting to study when young rendered him ignorant all his life.

‡ *Rule. A noun before the verbal abstract is put in the possessive case; as, Much will depend on the pupil's composing frequently.*

Sometimes, however, the sense forbids it to be put in the possessive case; thus, What do you think of my horse running to-day? means, Do you think I should let him run? but, What do you think of my horse's running? means, He has run, do you think he ran well?

RULE XIII. *The passive or complete participle is used after the verbs have and be; as, I have written a letter; he was chosen.**

☞ The Active participle of a Transitive verb is generally used after the verb to be, to express the continued suffering of an action; as, The house is building, or is being built.

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

The British flag is respected in every land. If they had not left the ship, they might have been saved. I saw you before I was seen by you. The wind has ceased, but the sea is still tossing. Though the ball was extracted a week ago, yet he is still suffering severely from the wound.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He has wrote his copy. He had mistook his true interest. All the gloves that were stole last night were wove ones. His resolution was too strong to be shook by slight opposition. The horse was stole. The Rhine was froze over. She was showed into the drawing-room. The grass was trode down. The work was very well execute. His vices have weakened his mind, and broke his health.

* He soon begun to be weary of having nothing to do. He was greatly heated, and he druik with avidity.

The bending hermit here a prayer begun.

A second deluge learning thus o'errun;
And the monks finished what the Goths begun.

* The *pass. participle* must not be used instead of the *past tense*: It is improper to say, *he begun*, for *he began*; *he run*, for *he ran*.

RULE XIV. *Pronouns agree with the nouns for which they stand in gender, number, and person, but not in case; as, John has lost his book. Every tree is known by its fruit.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

James accompanied his mother in her journey to London. The man who loves his country will risk his life for its defence.

Night, sable goddess! from her ebon throne
In rayless majesty now stretches forth
Her leaden sceptre o'er a slumbering world.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

If the boys are diligent in learning, she will improve. As the girl is most diligent, it should be rewarded. A horse is a useful animal, and well is she worthy of her food. Manure the garden with ashes, for it is an excellent manure for it. Can any one, on their entrance into life, be fully secure that they shall not be deceived?

* I have not seen him this ten days. Those sort of people fear nothing. The chasm made by the earthquake was twenty foot broad. There is six foot water in the hold. I have no interests but that of truth and virtue. What a dense crowd! we shall not be able to force our way through them.

† * Rule. *Nouns and numeral adjectives must agree in number according to the sense; thus, This boys, should be these boys, because boys is plural; and six feet, should be six feet, because six is plural.*

Whole should never be joined to distributive nouns in the plural; thus, Almost the whole inhabitants were present; should be, Almost all the inhabitants; but it may be joined to collective nouns in the plural; thus, Whole cities were swallowed up by the earthquake.

RULE XV. *The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person ; as, Thou who readeſt ; the book which was loſt.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

The money which the miſer hoards in his coffers might feed and clothe hundreds of his brethren who are in need. Tell, thou who art a father, how poignant is the anguiſh which the miſconduct of a child produces in the parental boſom.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Those which ſeek Wiſdom will certainly find her. Bleſſed is the man which walketh in wiſdom's ways. The child which* was loſt is found.

† The tiger is a beaſt who deſtroys without pity. Who of thoſe men came to his aſſiſtance ?

‡ It is the beſt which can be got. Solomon was the wiſeſt man whom ever the world ſaw. It is the ſame picture which you ſaw before. All which I have is thine. The lady and lap-dog which we ſaw at the window.

* It does not appear to me that it is harſh or improper, as Mr. Murray ſays, to apply *who* to *children*, becauſe they have little reaſon and reflection ; but if it is, at what *age* ſhould we lay aſide *which* and apply *who* to them ? *That* ſeems preferable to either. In our tranſlation of the Bible, *who* and *that* are both applied to children, but never *which*. See 2 Sam. xii. 14, 15. Matt. ii. 16. Rev. xii. 5.

† *Which* is applied to inferior animals, and alſo to perſons in aſking queſtions.

‡ Rule. *THAT* is uſed inſtead of *WHO* or *WHICH*.

1. *After adjectives in the ſuperlative degree,—after the words Same and All, and often after Some and Any.*

2. *When the antecedent conſiſts of two nouns, the one requiring Who and the other Which ; as,—The man and the horſe that we ſaw yeſterday.*

3. *After the interrogative Who ; as,—Who that has any ſenſe of religion would have argued thus ?*

There ſeems to be no ſatisfactory reaſon for preferring *that* to *who* after *ſame* and *all*, except uſage. There is indeed a good authority for uſing *who* after *all*, as for uſing *that*. Addiſon, for inſtance, uſes *all who* ſeveral times in one paper.

RULE XVI. *When the relative is preceded by two antecedents of different persons, it and the verb generally agree in person with the last; as, Thou art the boy that was dux yesterday.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

I am the man who commands you. Your unknown benefactor was I, who am still ready to help you. Thou art the friend who has so often assisted me. I am the Lord thy God, who have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.†

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Thou art a pupil who possesses bright parts, but who hast cultivated them but little. I am a man who speak but seldom. Thou James, art he that taughtest me that industry is a good estate.

† The king dismissed his minister without any warning or inquiry, who had never before been known to treat his advisers with other than the utmost consideration and kindness.

* Sometimes the relative agrees with the former antecedent; as, I am verily a man who am a Jew. Acts xxii. 8.

The propriety of this rule has been called in question, because the relative should agree with the subject of the verb, whether the subject be next the relative or not. This is true, but it is also true that the subject is generally next the relative, and the rule is calculated to prevent the impropriety of changing from one person of the verb to another, as in the 3d example of errors to be corrected.

† When we address the Divine Being, it is, in my opinion, more pointed and solemn to make the relative agree with the *second person*. In the Scriptures this is generally done. See Neh. ix. 7, &c. In the third person singular of verbs, the solemn *eth* seems to become the dignity of the Almighty, better than the familiar *es*; thus, I am the Lord thy God who *teacheth* thee to profit; who *leadeth* thee by the way that thou shouldst go: is more dignified than, I am the Lord thy God who *teaches* thee to profit; who *leads* thee.

‡ Rule. *The relative ought to be placed next its antecedent to prevent ambiguity*: thus, The boy beat his companion, whom everybody believed incapable of doing mischief; *should be*, The boy, whom everybody believed incapable of doing mischief, beat his companion.

RULE XVII. *When singular nominatives of different persons are separated by OR or NOR, the verb agrees with the person next it; as, Either thou or I am in fault; I, or thou, or he, is the author of it.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Neither my sister nor I have been taught to dance. James and you were always attentive to your studies. Either my brother or I am to go. Either thy cousin or thou hast betrayed my secret. I, or you, or the boy who sits beside us, is sure to be blamed for overturning the inkbottle.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Either I or thou am greatly mistaken. He or I is sure of this week's prize. John or I has done it. He or thou is the person who must go to London on that business. Either he or I has done it. Neither my tutor nor I has been able to solve the problem. John and I am to sleep together. Neither you nor he are so fond of books as you ought to be. Either you or George were present when Robert and I was invited to the concert. Why didst thou and thy brother both remain silent when either thou or he shouldst have spoken in my defence?

* The verb, though expressed only to the last person, is understood in its proper person to each of the rest, and the sentence, when the ellipsis is supplied, stands thus, "Either thou art in fault, or I am in fault;" and the next sentence, Either I am the author of it, or thou art the author of it, or he is the author of it.

Supplying the ellipsis thus would render the sentences correct; but so strong is our natural love of brevity, that such a tedious and formal attention to correctness would justly be reckoned stiff and pedantic. It is better to avoid both these forms of expression when it can be conveniently done.

nat
the
sail
T

M
mar
one
doe
pare
the
him

E
this
choi
min
serv
†
His
trov
†
You
ther

* TH
plying
A pare
a thou
† Ru
nomina
natura
† Ru
complex
I or W
tioned;
have k

RULE XVIII. *A singular and a plural nominative, separated by OR or NOR, require a verb in the plural; as, Neither the captain nor the sailors were saved.**

The plural nominative should be placed *next* the verb.

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Neither poverty nor riches are injurious to a man whose heart is right with God. Whether one or more were concerned in the business, does not yet appear. Neither this man nor his parents have sinned. The shame of defeat, or the hardships of the campaign, have brought him to a premature grave.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He or they was offended at it. The cares of this life, or the deceitfulness of riches, has choked the seeds of virtue in many a promising mind. Neither the king nor his ministers deserves to be praised.

† His meat were locusts and wild honey. His chief occupation and enjoyment were controversy.

‡ Thou and he shared it between them. You and he are diligent in reading their books, therefore they are good boys.

* The same observation may be made respecting the manner of supplying the ellipsis under this rule, that was made respecting the last. A pardonable love of brevity is the cause of the ellipsis in both, and in a thousand other instances.

† Rule I. *When the verb TO BE stands between a singular and a plural nominative, it agrees with the one next it, or with the one which is more naturally the subject of it; as, "The wages of sin is death."*

‡ Rule II. *When a pronoun refers to two words of different persons, coupled with and, it becomes plural, and agrees with the First person when I or We is mentioned; and with the Second, when I or We is not mentioned; as "John and I will lend you our books." "James and you have learned your lessons."*

RULE XIX. *It is improper to use both a noun and its pronoun as a nominative to the same verb; as, John he is come home; —*omit he.*

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

The king he is just. The night it was dark, and the wind it was high. My banks they are furnished with bees. The mate having persuaded the crew to mutiny, he was put in irons. That the soul be without knowledge, it is not good.

† The golden rule, † if it † had been observed, the bankrupt who lost his means without any fault of his own, he would not have been so harshly treated by his creditors. † Health, though it is a blessing of such worth, that money, and rank, and fame, are mere baubles in comparison, yet its true value is never known till it is impaired or lost. Whoever forms his opinion of religion from the bad conduct of many of its professors, he will form a very erroneous opinion of it indeed.

§ The modest man thou shouldst patronize him

The friends thou hast, and their adoption tried,
Grapple them to thy soul with hooks of steel.

* In some cases where the noun is highly emphatical, the repetition of it in the pronoun is not only allowable but even elegant; as in 1 Kings xviii. 39; see also Deut. xxi. 6.

† *Rule and it* are the two nominatives; but, contrary to the remark made at page 152, "That every nom. should belong to some verb, expressed or implied," the word *rule* stands by itself without having any verb with which it might agree. The same remark applies to *health* in the next sentence.

† It ought to be, *If the golden rule had been observed, &c.*

† It ought to be, *Though health is a blessing of such worth, &c.*

§ *Rule, It is improper to use both a noun and its pronoun as an objective after the same verb; thus, I saw her the Queen at Windsor; omit her*

cla
be
hu
wa

the
usa
sho
clas

T
dea
are
pion
clim
hum
reas
subr
suffe
know
His
any
chari

* The
love to
The
as, To e
be made
Note.
as, "Ye
mises."
what it
&c., mu
wouldst
to ruin,

RULE XX. *When the infinitive mood or a clause is the nominative to a verb, the verb should be in the third person singular; as, To err—is human, to forgive is divine.* His being idle was the cause of his ruin.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

To be temperate in eating and drinking is the best preservative of health. To take ill usage meekly marks a noble spirit. That you should be content to stand at the foot of the class surprises me.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

To be wickedly intent on doing mischief are death, but to be devoutly intent on doing good are life. To live soberly, righteously, and piously, are required of all men. That warm climates should accelerate the growth of the human body, and shorten its duration, are very reasonable to believe. That it is our duty to submit to reproach, insult, and all manner of suffering, rather than do the slightest thing we know to be wrong, admit not of any doubt. His hearing no evil of a friend, nor speaking any of an enemy, were an evidence of his charity.

* The *infinitive* is equal to a *noun*; thus, *To play* is pleasant, and boys *love play*; are equal to, *Play* is pleasant, and boys *love play*, p. 66, b. The *infinitive* is sometimes used instead of the present participle; as, *To advise*; *to attempt*; or *advising, attempting*; this substitution can be made only in the *beginning of a sentence*.

Note. Part of a sentence is often used as the *objective* after a verb; as, "You will soon find that the world does not perform what it promises." *What will you find?* *Ans.* That the world does not perform what it promises. Therefore the clause, *that the world does not perform, &c.*, must be the *objective* after *find*. Did I not tell (to) thee, that thou wouldst bring me to ruin? Here the clause, *that thou wouldst bring me to ruin*, is the *objective* after *tell*.

RULE XXI. *Double comparatives and superlatives are improper*; thus, Mine is a *more better* book, but John's is the *most best*; should be, Mine is a *better* book, but John's is the *best*.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

That was the most unkindest cut of all. A more happier day I never spent. All men are, in a greater or lesser degree, foolish. I am more inferior—you are more superior. He is the chiefest* among ten thousand.

His assertion was most untrue. His work is perfect; his brother's more perfect; and his father's the most perfect of all.

Promiscuous Exercises.

I have not heard whether he has accepted the invitation. This is certainly an useful invention. The time will come when no oppressor will be able to screen themselves from punishment. The cavalry and infantry was mingled together in the utmost confusion. If thou be sure that the ice shall not break, you may slide upon it. A taste for music is more universal in Italy and Germany than in this country. A great crowd was assembled in the street, but they dispersed on the appearance of the military. The forty-second regiment suffered much at Waterloo, and vast numbers assembled in Edinburgh to witness their return.

* *Chief, universal, perfect, true, &c., imply the superlative degree without est or most. In language sublime or passionate, however, the word perfect requires the superlative form to give it effect. A bridegroom enraptured with his bride would naturally call her the most perfect of her sex. Superior and inferior always imply comparison, and require to after them.*

R
tence
allow
or I

I
ching
never
no fa
nor n
affect
thyse
solve
at pre

The
built.
in nur
She v
which
am co
to vie
are to
mere h
words.
whole
examin
the sto

* Some
Nor did th
case they
When o
another w
expression
it is elega

RULE XXII. *Two negatives in the same sentence are improper*; * thus, I cannot by no means allow it; *should be*, I can by no means allow it, or I cannot by any means allow it.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

I cannot drink no more. He cannot do nothing. I never did no harm to you. He will never be no taller. They could not travel no farther. Covet neither riches nor honours, nor no such perishing things. Nothing never affected her so much. Do not interrupt me thyself, nor let no one disturb me. I am resolved not to comply with the proposal, neither at present, nor at any other time.

Promiscuous Exercises.

The barracks for the troops are now being built. If the applicants for relief are only ten in number, I shall be able to supply their wants. She was gayer than the gayest of the ladies which adorn the Queen's court. James and I am cousins. Thy father's merits sets thee forth to view. Extravagance, as well as parsimony, are to be avoided. Prayer does not consist in mere bowing of the knee and uttering of solemn words. His shoes were quite wore out. The whole pupils of the school were present at the examination. Neither the engine-driver nor the stokers was to blame for the accident.

* Sometimes the two negatives are intended to be an affirmative; as, *Nor did they not perceive him*; That is, they *did* perceive him. In this case they are proper.

When one of the negatives (such as *dis, in, un, im, &c.*), is joined to another word, the two negatives form a pleasing and delicate variety of expression: as, His language, though simple, is *not inelegant*; that is, it is *elegant*.

RULE XXIII. *Adverbs are, for the most part, placed before adjectives, after verbs transitive or neuter, and between the auxiliary and the verb; as, He is very attentive: She behaves well, and is much esteemed.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Mary is remarkably tall. Ann reads correctly, and writes elegantly. The prince seldom sleeps as soundly as the peasant. Our blessed Lord, after being cruelly scourged, was ignominiously crucified.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He unaffectedly and forcibly spoke, and was heard attentively by the whole assembly. In the proper disposition of adverbs, the ear carefully requires to be consulted as well as the sense.

† The women contributed all their rings and jewels voluntarily to assist the government. Having† not known, or having not considered, the measures proposed, he failed of success. It was on his own account solely that I went; and to see him chiefly. I state merely the facts. I have no horses; I only have a mule. He not only was wise, but good.

|| Ask me never so much money for it.

* This is but a general rule. For it is impossible to give an exact and determinate one for the placing of adverbs on all occasions. The easy flow and perspicuity of the phrase ought to be chiefly regarded.

† The adverb is sometimes placed with propriety before the verb, or at some distance after it: as, The women voluntarily contributed all their rings and jewels, &c. They carried their proposition farther.

Adverbs of inference, affirmation, and contingency are generally placed at the beginning of a sentence; as, Therefore I conclude. Doubtless he will come: Perhaps he will not.

‡ Not, when it qualifies the active participle, comes before it.

|| Never is often improperly used for ever; thus, "If I walk never so fast," should be "ever so fast."

Ru
adver
well,
tion,
Adve
tives qu

The
nobles
He li
tates
prodig
hauste
of pru
excell
They
conduc
They
the wa

* If
come
Where
immed
He dre
represe
last yea
situation

* Rule I
because it
would rend

† Rule I
generally u

‡ Rule I
which, &c.

Some adj
and to expr
adverbs wou
vowel short.

RULE XXIV. *Adjectives should not be used as adverbs, nor adverbs as adjectives; as, Remarkable well, for remarkably well; Thy often indisposition, for thy frequent indisposition; or,*

Adverbs qualify adjectives, verbs, and other adverbs.—Adjectives qualify nouns.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

They are miserable poor. They behaved the noblest. He fought bolder than his brother. He lived in a manner agreeably to the dictates of reason and religion. He was extreme prodigal, and his property is now near exhausted. They lived conformable to the rules of prudence. He speaks very fluent, reads excellent, but does not think very coherent. They came agreeable to their promise, and conducted themselves suitable to the occasion. They hoped for a soon and prosperous issue to the war.

* From hence it follows. From whence come ye? We went from thence to Oxford. Where† are you going? Bid him come here immediately. We walked there in an hour. He drew up a petition where‡ he too frequently represented his own merit. He went to London last year, since when I have not seen him. The situation where I found him.

* Rule I. *From* should not be used before *hence, thence, and whence*, because it is *implied*.—In many cases, however, the omission of *from* would render the language stiff and disagreeable.

† Rule II. After verbs of motion, *hither, thither, and whither*, are generally used in poetry, instead of *here, there, where*; as, *Come hither, boy.*

‡ Rule III. *When* should not be used as a noun, nor *where*, for *in which, &c.*—For *while*, see Key, 235.

Some adjectives are occasionally used to modify the action of verbs, and to express the quality of things connected with the action where adverbs would not do: as, *Flow deep. Put him right.*—Pronounce that vowel short.—*Out close.* Such phrases are deemed good English.

† RULE XXV. *The comparative degree, and the adjective other, require than after them, and such requires as; as, Greater than I;—No other than he;—Such as do well.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Gold is softer than silver, but harder than tin. No other than a fool would make such a rash promise. Such a studious boy as Charles is sure to take a higher place than Henry, though the latter is the cleverer of the two.†

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

He has little more of the scholar besides the name. Be ready to succour such persons who need thy assistance. They had no sooner risen but they applied themselves to their studies. This is none other but the gate of paradise. To trust in him is no more but to acknowledge his power.

† James is the wisest of the two. He is the likeliest of any other to succeed. Jane is the wittier of the three, not the wiser. Of two evils choose the least. Which of these two roads is the shortest? Which is the greater poet, Homer, Virgil, or Milton?

Of two such lessons ~~why~~ forget
The noblest and the manliest one?

* *Such, meaning either a consequence, or so great, requires that; as, His behaviour was such, that I ordered him to leave the room* Such is the influence of money, that few can resist it.

† *Rule. When two objects are compared, the comparative is generally used; but when more than two, the superlative: as, This is the younger of the two; Mary is the wisest of them all.*

When the two objects form a group, or are not so much opposed to each other as to require *than* before the last, some respectable writers use the superlative, and say, "James is the wisest of the two." "He is the weakest of the two." The superlative is often more agreeable to the ear; nor is the sense injured. In many cases a strict adherence to the comparative form renders the language too stiff and formal.

R
either
or pr
I (an
me.*

Yo
is no
ter ab
been
as di

Jo
good
than
more
well
than
She i
us lea
them

† Y
Whor
book-
He ar

* *When
objective
—than u
who is t
as, "He
have use
phrases
greater t*

† *Rule.
same case
Whose bo*

RULE XXVI. *A pronoun after than, or as, either agrees with a verb, or is governed by a verb or preposition understood*; as, He is wiser *than* I (am); she loved him more *than* (she loved) me.*

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

You praise my cousin more than me, but he is not more deserving than I. They have better abilities than we; and the prize would have been gained by them, not us, if they had been as diligent as we.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

John can write better than me. He is as good as her. Thou art a much greater loser than me by his death. She suffers hourly more than me. They know how to write as well as him; but he is a better grammarian than them. They are greater gainers than us. She is not so learned as him. If the king give us leave, we may perform the office as well as them that do.

† Who betrayed her companion? Not me. Whom did you meet? He. Who bought that book? Him. Whom did you see there? He and his sister. Whose pen is this? Mine's.

* When *who* immediately follows *than*, it is used improperly in the objective case; as, "Alfred, *than whom* a greater king never reigned;" —*than whom* is not grammatical. It ought to be, *than who*; because *who* is the nom. to *was understood*—*Than whom* is as bad a phrase as, "He is taller *than him*." It is true that some of our best writers have used *than whom*; but it is also true, that they have used other phrases which we have rejected as ungrammatical; but custom is greater than grammar, and is indeed its foundation.

† Rule.—The word containing the answer to a question must be in the same case with the word which asks it: as, *Who* said that? *I* (said it). *Whose* books are these? *John's* (books).

RULE XXVII. *The distributive pronouns, each, every, either, neither, agrees with nouns and verbs in the singular number only; as, Each of his brothers is in a favourable situation; Every man is accountable for himself; Either of them is good enough.**

EXERCISES TO BE PARSED AND CONSTRUED.

Every face has its own peculiar expression:
Either of the two is at your disposal. Neither of the combatants was prepared for so hard an encounter.

Each look'd to sun, and stream, and plain,
As what he ne'er might see again.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Let each esteem others better than themselves. Every one of the letters bear date after his banishment. Each of them, in their turn, receive the benefits to which they are entitled. Neither of them seem to have any idea that their opinions may be ill-founded. Are either of these men your friend?

† The giant had on every hand six fingers and on every foot six toes.

‡ The king of Israel and the king of Judah sat either of them on his throne.

* *Each* agrees with two or more objects, and signifies both of the two, or every one of any number taken singly.

† *Every* agrees with more than two objects, and signifies each of them taken individually. It may be followed by a plural noun when the objects are taken collectively. *Every six months* means every one of six months.

Either signifies the one or the other, but not both. *Neither* imports not either.

‡ *Either* is sometimes improperly used instead of *both*: as, The city London stands on either side of the river Thames, instead of, on both sides of the river.

R
are co
and t
as opp
that e

We
this te
Religi
gion s
them
ishabl
Hones
this e
it. B
produc
heat,
it, and
and sh
heat b

* M
highes
for his
for his
cheerfu
as an
Body
its way
into th

* *Forme*
alike in bo
That an
applied to
the repeti

RULE XXVIII. *When two persons or things are contrasted, that refers to the first mentioned, and this to the last; as, Virtue and vice are as opposite to each other as light and darkness; that ennobles the mind, this debases it.*

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Wealth and poverty are both temptations; this tends to excite pride, that discontentment. Religion raises men above themselves, irreligion sinks them beneath the brutes; that binds them down to a poor pitiable speck of perishable earth, this exalts them to the skies. Honesty and dishonesty are opposite qualities; this enhances a man's character, that degrades it. Black and white are opposite colours, and produce opposite effects; the latter absorbs heat, and is therefore cold: the former reflects it, and is therefore warm:—hence we use shirts and sheets of white, because they keep the heat better.

* Moses and Solomon were men of the highest renown; the latter was remarkable for his meekness, the former was renowned for his wisdom. I have always preferred cheerfulness to mirth; the former I consider as an act, the latter as a habit of the mind. Body and soul must part; the former wings its way to its almighty source, the latter drops into the dark and noisome grave.

* *Former and latter* are often used instead of *that* and *this*. They are alike in both numbers.

That and *this* are seldom applied to *persons*; but *former* and *latter* are applied to *persons* and things indiscriminately. In most cases, however the repetition of the noun is preferable to either of them.



RULE XXIX. *In the use of verbs and other words that relate to time, the order of the events must be observed; for example, I remembered to see him last May, should be, I remember to have seen him, &c.**

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

I know that worthy family more than twenty years, and they continue to honour me with their friendship all that time. The next new-year's day I shall be at school three years. The court laid hold on all the opportunities which the weakness or necessities of princes afford it, to extend its authority. He studies hard that he might have a well informed mind. His sickness was so great, that I often feared he would have died before our arrival. It has long been known that the ford could be safely taken only in summer.

† I always intended to have rewarded my son according to his merit. We have done no more than it was our duty to have done. From the little conversation I had with him, he appeared to have been a man of letters. It was a pleasure to have received his approbation of my labours. I intended to have written you last week.—

‡ I have been at London last year. He has been told three months ago not to tell lies. He has done it before. He has lately lost an only son.

* The best general rule that can be given, is *To observe what the sense necessarily requires.*

† Rule. *After the Past Tense, the Inf. infinitive (and not the perfect) should be used; as, I intended to write to my father, and not, I intended to have written:—for however long it now is since I thought of writing, to write was the act I intended, and must still be considered as present when I bring back that time, and the thoughts of it.*

‡ See page 25, Middle.—Key, p. 121.

RULE XXX. *It is improper to place a clause of a sentence between a possessive case and the word which usually follows it; thus, He slept at the Duke's, as it is called, Arms; should be, He slept at the Duke's Arms, as it is called.*

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

They very justly condemned the prodigal's, as he was called, senseless and extravagant conduct. They implicitly obeyed the protector's, as they called him, imperious mandates. Beyond this, the arts cannot be traced of civil society. These are David's, the king, priest, and prophet of the Jewish people's psalms. This is Paul's, the Christian hero, and great apostle of the Gentiles' advice. The last month, as you know, of the year is December.

* Howsoever beautiful they appear, they have no real merit. In whatsoever light we view him, his conduct will bear inspection. On whatsoever side they are contemplated, they appear to advantage. Howsoever much he might despise the maxims of the king's administration, he kept a total silence on that subject. No man should voluntarily go in the way of temptation, howsoever high his previous attainments in virtue.

† Whoso is habitually idle will at last feel sorrow and regret.

* Rule. Whichsoever and whatsoever are often divided by the interposition of the corresponding word; thus, On whichever side the king cast his eyes: *Should be, On which side soever the king, &c.*

† I think this rule unnecessary, if not improper.—It would be better to say, *Howsoever beautiful, &c.*—See my reasons, *Key*, p. 123, Nos. 247-8-9

‡ *Whoso* is an old word used instead of *he that*; as, *Whoso is indolent will never be happy*; it should be, *He that, &c.*

RULE XXXI. *Before names of places.*

- To*—is used after a verb of motion; as, We *went* to Spain.
At—is used after the verb *to be*; as, I *was* at Leith.
In—is used before names of countries and large cities; as, I live in England, in London.
At—is used before villages, towns, and foreign cities; as, He resided at Gretna Green; at Leeds; at Rome.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

They have just arrived in Leith, and are going to Dublin. They will reside two months at England. I have been to London, after having resided at France; and I now live in Bath. I was in the place appointed long before any of the rest. We touched in Liverpool on our way for New York. He resides in Mavisbank in Scotland. She has lodgings at George Square.*

† Ah! unhappy thee, who are deaf to the calls of duty and of honour. O happy † us, surrounded with so many blessings. Woe's he, for he is a confirmed drunkard.

* One inhabitant of a city, speaking of another's residence, says, He stays in Bank Street; or if the word *number* be used, at No. — Princes Street.—K. 195-6.

† Rule. The interjections *Oh!* and *Ah!* &c. generally require the objective case of the first personal pronoun, and the nominative of the second; as, Ah me! O thou fool! O ye hypocrites! Woe's thou, would be improper; it should be, Woe's thee; that is, Woe is to thee.

‡ Interjections sometimes require the objective case after them, but they never govern it. In the first edition of this Grammar, I followed Mr Murray and others in leaving *we*, in the exercises, to be turned into *us*; but that it would be *we*, and not *us*, is obvious; because it is the *Nom.* to *are* understood; Thus, *Oh happy are we*, or *Oh we are happy* (being) surrounded with so many blessings.

As interjections, owing to quick feelings, express only the emotion of the mind, without stopping to mention the circumstances that produced them; many of the phrases in which they occur are very elliptical, and therefore a verb or preposition must be understood. *Me*, for instance, in *Ah me*, is governed by *befallen* or *upon* understood; Thus, *Ah*, what mischief has *befallen* me, or come upon me.

Oh is used to express the emotion of pain, sorrow, or surprise.

O is used to express wishing, exclamation, or a direct address to a person.

RULE XXXII. *Certain words and phrases must be followed with appropriate prepositions; such be,*

Accuse of	Exception from
Abhorrence of	Expert at or in
Acquit of	Fall under
Adapt to	Free from
Agreeable to	Glad of or at—p. 115, b.
Averse to— ^{see} p. 115, b.	Independent of
Bestow upon or on	Insist upon
Boast or brag of*	Made of
Call on or for—p. 114, b.	Marry to
Change for	Martyr for
Confide in†	Need of
Conformable to	Observance of
Compliance with	Prejudice against
Consonant to	Profit by
Conversant with, in—p. 115, b.	Provide with
Dependent upon or on—	Reconcile to
Derogation from [p. 114, b.	Reduce under or to—p. 115, a
Die of or by	Regard to
Differ from	Replete with
Difficulty in	Resemblance to
Diminution of	Resolve on
Disappointed in or of—p. 151.	Sswerve from
Disapprove of‡	Taste for or of—p. 152.
Discouragement to	Think of or on—p. 114, b.
Dissent from	True to
Eager in	Wait on
Engage in	Worthy of§

* *Boast* is often used without *of*; as, For if I have *boasted* anything.

† The same preposition that follows the *verb* or *adverb* generally follows the *noun* which is derived from it: as, *Confide in*, confidence *in*; disposed to tyrannize, a disposition to tyranny; independently of.

‡ *Disapprove* and *approve* are frequently used without *of*.

§ *Of* is sometimes omitted, and sometimes inserted after *worthy*.

Many of these words take other prepositions after them to express other meanings; thus, for example, *Fall in*, to concur, to comply.—*Fall off*, to forsake. *Fall out*, to happen. *Fall upon*, to attack. *Fall to*, to begin eagerly to eat; to apply himself to. *Fall from*, to revolt from.

EXERCISES ON RULE XXXII.

He was totally* dependent of the papal crown. He accused the minister for betraying the Dutch. You have bestowed your favours to the most deserving persons. His abhorrence to gaming was extreme. I differ with you. The English were very different then, to what they are now. In compliance to his father's advice. I dissent with the judgment of the court. It is no discouragement for the authors. The wisest princes need not think it any diminution to their greatness, or derogation to their sufficiency, to rely upon counsel. Is it consonant with our nature? Conformable with this plan. Agreeable with the sacred text. Call for your uncle.†

The river abounds with trout. He had no regard for his father's commands. Thy prejudice to my cause. It is more than they thought for.‡ There is no need for it. Reconciling himself with the king. No resemblance with each other. Upon such occasions as fell into their cognizance. I am engaged with writing. We profit from experience. He swerved out of the path. He is resolved in going to the Persian court. Expert of his work.

* *Dependent, dependence, &c.* are spelled indifferently with a or e in the last syllable.

† *Call for*—is to demand, to require. *Call on*, is to pay a short visit; to request; as, While you call on him—I shall call for a bottle of wine.

‡ The authorities for *think of* and *think on* are nearly equal. The latter, however, abounds more in the Scriptures than the former; as, *Think on me* when it shall be well with thee: *Think upon me* for good: *Whosoever things are true, &c. think on* these things. But *think of* is perhaps more common in modern publications.

EXERCISES ON RULE XXXII.

Expert on deceiving. The Romans reduced the world* to their own power. He provided them of every thing. We insist in it. He seems to have a taste in such studies.

He died for thirst. He found none on whom he could safely confide. He was accused for it. It was very well adapted for the purpose. He acquitted me from any imputation. You are conversant† with that science. They boast in their great riches. Call of James to walk with you. When we have had a true taste for the pleasures of virtue, we can have no relish for those of vice. I rejoice in your success. He is glad of accidents.‡ She is glad at his company. A strict observance after times and fashions. This book is replete in errors. These are exceptions to the general rule. He died a martyr to Christianity. This change is to the better. His productions were scrupulously exact, and conformable with all the rules of correct writing. He died of the sword. She finds a difficulty of fixing her mind. This prince was naturally averse§ from war. A freeholder is bred with an aversion from subjection.

* Reduce under is to subdue. In other cases *to* follows it; as, To reduce to practice, to fractions, &c.

† We say conversant *with* men in things. Addison has conversant among the writings of the most polite authors, and conversant about worldly affairs. Conversant *with* is preferable.

‡ Glad of is perhaps more proper, when the cause of joy is something gained or possessed; and glad at, when something befalls another; as, Jonah was exceedingly glad of the gourd; *He that is glad at the misfortunes of others rarely escapes misfortune himself.*

§ Averse and aversion require to after them rather than from; but both are used, and sometimes even by the same author.

RULE XXXIII. All the parts of a sentence should correspond to one another, and a regular and dependent construction throughout should be preserved.* For example, the sentence, "He was more beloved, but not so much admired, as Cinthio," is inaccurate; because *more* requires *than* after it, which is nowhere found in the sentence. It *should be*, He was more beloved *than* Cinthio, but not so much admired.

A proper choice of words, and a perspicuous arrangement, should be carefully attended to.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

The reward is his due, and it has²⁹ already, or will hereafter, be given to him. He was guided by interests always different³², sometimes contrary to those of the community. The intentions of some of these philosophers, nay of many, might²⁹ and probably were good. No person was ever so perplexed¹¹, or sustained²⁵ mortifications as he has done to-day. He was more bold and active²⁵, but not so wise and studious as his companion. Ye will not study your lessons diligently, that ye might²⁹ be esteemed, commended, and rewarded. Sincerity is as valuable¹¹, and even more valuable²⁶, than knowledge. The greatest masters of critical learning differ³² among one another.

But from this dreary period the recovery of the empire was become desperate; no wisdom could obviate its decadence. He was at one time thought to be a supposititious child.

* This rule is scarcely of any value as a rule; for every sentence on this page, except the last two, may be corrected by the preceding rules, as the reference by small figures will show; but it has been retained, because, where two words require a different construction, it will tend to correct the common error of forgetting the construction of the former word, and adhering to that of the latter.

R
nou
in b
T
spee
T
artic
read
T
but i

H
pass
the
best
We
rew
or t
Pur
its i
as t
ract
repr
never
fath
†
little
of o
the c

* Th
when c
thus, 7
more g
† A r
tion of
him a t

RULE XXXIV. Of the ARTICLES. *An* or *a* is used before nouns in the singular number only. *The** is used before nouns in both numbers.

The article is omitted before a noun that stands for a *whole species*; and before the names of minerals, metals, arts, &c.

The latter of two nouns after a comparative should have no article when they both refer to *one person*; as, He is a better reader than writer.

To use the *Articles* properly, is of the greatest importance: but it is impossible to give a rule applicable to every case.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

Reason was given to a man to contrōl his passions. The gold is corrupting. A man is the noblest work of the creation. Wisest and best men are sometimes betrayed into errors. We must act our part with a constancy, though reward of our constancy be distant. The odour or the smell of a body is part of the body itself. Purity has its seat in the heart: but extends its influence over so much of outward conduct, as to form the great and material part of a character. At worst, I could but incur a gentle reprimand. The profligate man is seldom or never found to be the good husband, the good father, or the beneficent neighbour.

† He has been much censured for paying a little attention to his business. So bold a breach of order called for little severity in punishing the offender.

* *The* is used before an *individual* representing the whole of its species, when compared with another individual representing another species: thus, *The* dog is a more grateful animal than *the* cat; i. e. *All* dogs are more grateful than cats.

† A nice distinction of the sense is sometimes made by the use or omission of the article *a*. If I say, he behaved with a little reverence; I praise him a little. If I say, he behaved with little reverence; I blame him.

RULE XXXV. An *ellipsis*, or *omission* of some words, is frequently admitted. Thus, instead of saying, He was a learned man, he was a wise man, and he was a good man; we say, He was a *learned, wise, and good* man.

EXERCISES TO BE CORRECTED.

A house and a garden. The laws of God, and the laws of man. Avarice and cunning may acquire an estate; but avarice and cunning cannot gain friends. His crimes had brought him into extreme distress, and extreme perplexity. He has an affectionate brother and an affectionate sister. By presumption, and by vanity, we provoke enmity, and we incur contempt. Our duties require to be impressed on us by admonition, and to be recommended by example. He is temperate, he is disinterested, he is benevolent. Perseverance in laudable pursuits will reward all our toils, and will produce effects beyond our calculation. He went, not by the road, but through the fields, in the hope of thereby shortening his journey. Destitute of principle, he regarded neither his family, nor his friends, nor his reputation. He insulted every man and every woman in the company. The temper of him who is always in the bustle of the world, will be often ruffled and will be often disturbed.

* He regards his word, but thou dost not regard it. They must be punished, and they shall be punished. We succeeded, but they did not succeed.

* The auxiliaries of the compound tenses are often used alone: as, We have done it, but thou *hast* not; i. e. thou *hast* not done it.

RULE XXXVI. *An ellipsis is not allowable when it would obscure the sentence, weaken its force, or be attended with an impropriety; for example, "We speak that we do know, and testify that we have seen," should be, We speak that which we do know, and testify that which we have seen.*

EXERCISES.

* A noble spirit disdaineth the malice of fortune; his greatness of soul is not to be cast down. A house and † orchard. A horse and ass. A learned and amiable young man. I gladly shunned who gladly fled from me. A taste for useful knowledge will provide for us a great and noble entertainment when others leave us. They enjoy also a free constitution and laws. The captain had several men died in his ship of the scurvy. I must, however, be so candid to own I have been mistaken. The sacrifices of virtue will not only be rewarded hereafter, but recompensed even in this life. Oh, piety! Virtue! how insensible have I been to thy charms! That is a property most men have, or at least may attain. There is nothing men are more deficient in, than knowing their own characters. Why do some men injure their own reputation by doing that which is not lawful to do? Neither has he, nor any other persons, suspected so much dissimulation.

* A noble spirit disdaineth, &c. should be, *A man of a noble spirit disdaineth, &c.* This will render the sentence consistent with the rules of grammar and with common sense; to talk of the *soul* of a *spirit* is ridiculous.

† The article being once expressed, the repetition of it becomes unnecessary, except when a different form of it is requisite; as, *A house and an orchard*; and when some peculiar emphasis requires a repetition; as, *Not only the year, but the day and the hour, were appointed.*

CONSTRUCTION.

The four following lines are construed by way of example. They were parsed at page 56. They are construed here, because the pupil should now be able to apply the Rules of Syntax.

O how stupendous was the power,
That raised me with a word ;
And* every day and every hour,
I lean upon the Lord.

How stupendous, adverbs are for the most part placed before adjectives, &c. *A power* is understood thus; *stupendous a power*,} at adjective agrees with a noun. *A power*, *s* is used before nouns in the singular number only—the *power*, *the* is used before nouns in both numbers—the *power was*, a verb agrees with its nominative—the *power that*, the relative agrees with its antecedent, &c. *That raised*, a verb agrees with its nom. *Raised me*, an active verb governs the objective case—*With a word*, prepositions govern the objective—*A word*—*A* is used before nouns in the singular, &c. (*During* is understood) *during every day*, prepositions govern the objective case—*Every day*, an adjective agrees with a noun—*Day* and *hour*, conjunctions couple the same cases of nouns and pronouns; for *hour* is governed by *during* understood again—*Every hour*, an adjective agrees, &c. *I lean*, a verb agrees with its nominative—*Upon the Lord*, prepositions govern the objective case.

The pronouns, *My*, *Thy*, *His*, *Her*, *Ours*, *Your*, *Their*, and *Its* must be construed exactly like nouns in the possessive case, for a pronoun is an exact resemblance of a noun in every thing but one; namely, it will not admit of an adjective before it like a noun. *His* is equal to *John's*, and *her* to *Ann's*, and *their* to the *men's*, in the following sentences.

John lost his gloves, *i. e.* John lost *John's* gloves. Ann found her book, *i. e.* Ann found *Ann's* book. The men took off their hats, *i. e.* the men took off the *men's* hats. The garden is productive, and its fruit is good, *i. e.* the *garden's* fruit. In all these cases, and in such phrases as, *my house*, *thy field*—*our lands*—*your estates*—*their property*—*whose horse*—the rule is, "When two nouns come together, signifying different things, the first is put in the possessive case."

* It is impossible to construe bad grammar. And here is so very vaguely used, that the rule, "Conjunctions couple the same moods and tenses of verbs, and the same cases of nouns and pronouns," will not apply in this passage.

† Or, how stupendous *the power was*; but it is certainly better to supply *a power*, thus; O how stupendous *a power* was the power that raised me with a word.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE
RULES OF SYNTAX.

John writes pretty. Mary sings sweet.
Where are you going, Thomas? I shall
never do so no more. The structure of plants
are highly curious. Was you present at last
meeting? He need not be in so much haste.
He dare not act otherwise than he does. Him
whom they seek is in the house. George or I
is the person. They or he is much to be
blamed. The troop consist of fifty men. She
has been ill this two months. A pillar sixty
foot high. His conduct evinced the most ex-
treme vanity. These trees are remarkable tall.
He acted bolder than was expected. This is
he who I gave the book to. Eliza always ap-
pears amiably. She goes there yesterday.
From whence came they? Who do you lodge
with now? He was born at London, but he
died in Bath. If he be sincere I am satisfied.
Her father and her were at church. The mas-
ter requested him and I to read more distinctly.
It is no more but his due. Flatterers flatter as
long and no longer than they have expectations
of gain. John told the same story as you
told. This is the largest tree which I have
ever seen.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Let he and I read the next chapter. She is free of pain. Those sort of dealings are unjust. David the son of Jesse was the youngest of his brothers. You was very kind to him, he said. Well, says I, what does you think of him now? James is one of those boys that was kept in at school, for bad behaviour. Thou, James, did deny the deed. Neither good nor evil come of themselves. We need not to be afraid. He expected to have gained more by the bargain. You should drink plenty of goat milk. It was him who spoke first. Do you like ass milk? Is it me that you mean? Who did you buy your grammar from? If one takes a wrong method at first setting out, it will lead them astray. Neither man nor woman were present. I am more taller than you. She is the same lady who sang so sweetly. He was a member of the most strictest society of Christians I ever saw. Is not thy wickedness great? and thine iniquities infinite? There was more sophists than one. If a person have lived twenty or thirty years, he should have some experience. If this were his meaning, the prediction has failed. Fidelity and truth is the foundation of all justice. His associates in wickedness will not fail to mark the alteration of his conduct. My father and my mother they set me a good example.

T
May
way
if he
caut
ber
lie
depe
he is
self,
more
T
hond
cans
quor
but
cont
riche
did
fathe
foun
ment
Thre
study
men
fear
reck
Rome
so lo
still

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

The crowd were so great that the Lord Mayor and Aldermen with difficulty made their way through them. Why find fault with a man if he have done thee no harm? I wrote to, and cautioned the captain against it. Every member of the body, every bone, joint, and muscle, lie exposed to many disorders. He acted independent in the transaction. It is not me who he is in love with; He which commands himself, commands the whole world. Nothing is more lovelier than virtue.

The peoples happiness is the statesmans honour. Changed to a worsser shape thou canst not be. I have drunk no spirituous liquors this six years. He is taller than me, but I am stronger than him. Solid peace and contentment consists neither in beauty or riches, but in the favour of Heaven. After who did you run in so much haste? I met your father, than who a worthier man is not to be found. Abuse of mercies ripen us for judgement. Peter and John is not at school to-day. Three of them was taken into custody. To study diligently, and behave genteelly, is commendable. The enemies who we have most to fear are those of our own hearts. Rēgulus was reckoned the most consummate warrior that Rome could then produce. Suppose life never so long, fresh accessions of knowledge may still be made.



PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Surely thou who reads so much in the Bible, can tell me what became of Elijah. Neither the master nor the scholars is reading. Trust not him, whom, you know, is dishonest. I love no interests but that of truth and virtue. Every one of the rebels were banished from his native country. No one can be blamed for taking due care of their health. If I had known the distress of my friend, it would be a pleasure to me to relieve him.

I have read Popes Homer, and Drydens Virgil. He that is diligent you should commend. There was an earthquake which made the earth to tremble. A simile and a metaphor is figures of speech which nearly resembles each other. I cannot commend him for justifying hisself when he knows that his conduct was so very improper. He was very much made on at school. Wisdom and virtue is undoubtedly a better inheritance than gold and silver. If he is alone, tell him the news; but if there is anybody with him, do not tell him. They ride faster than us. Though the news be strange, it is not unworthy of credit. If he does but approve my endeavours, it will be an ample reward. Was it him who came last? Yes, it was him.

For ever in this humble cell,
Let thee and I, my fair one, dwell.

Before the discovery was made of America⁸⁰

E
acter
liver
word
sets
Neit
loan
him
gene
midd
vant
T
servi
king
My
my
prop
ing
Noth
of du
Who
from,
into
well
is a
have
sight
a ver
thing
come
so mu

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Every man should act suitable to his character and station in life. His speech was delivered very distinct. I only spoke three words on that subject. The ant and the bee sets a good example before dronish boys. Neither borrow, neither lend, lest thou lose thy loan and friend. I expected to have found him better. Hannibal was one of the greatest generals whom the world ever saw. The middle station of life seems to be the most advantageously situated for gaining of wisdom.

These are the rules of grammar, by the observing which you may avoid mistakes. The king conferred on him the title of a duke. My exercises are not well wrote, I do not hold my pen well. Grammar teaches us to speak proper. She accused her companion for having betrayed her. I will not dissent with her. Nothing shall make me swerve out of the path of duty and honour. Who shall I give it to? Who are you looking for? It is a diminution from, or a derogation of his dignity. It fell into their notice or cognizance. He writes as well as me, but I read better than him. That is a book which I am much pleased with. I have been to see the coronation, and a fine sight it was. That picture of the emperor's is a very exact resemblance of him. Every thing that we here enjoy, change, decay, and come to an end. It is not him they blame so much.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

No people has more faults than they that pretend to have none. The laws of Draco is said to have been wrote with blood. It is so clear, or so obvious, as I need not explain it. She taught him and I to read. The more greater a bad man's accomplishments are, the more dangerous he is to society, and the more less fit for a companion. All have their faults, and each should endeavour to correct their own. Let your promises be few, and such that you can perform.

His being at enmity with Cæsar and Antony were the cause of perpetual discord. Their being forced to their books when out of school and tired with study, have been the reason why many have hated books all their lives. There was a coffee-house at that end of the town, in which several gentlemen used to meet of an evening. Do not despise the state of the poor, lest it becomes your own condition. It was his duty to have interposed his authority in an affair of so much importance. He spent his whole life in the doing good. Art thou the traveller who discoveredst these interesting remains? The winter has not been so severe as we expected it to have been. When sickness, infirmity, or reverse of fortune overtake us, the character and kindness of our friends is put to the test. Whoever said so, he has told a falsehood.

A
the
wer
and
the
of t
him
a w
one
Mel
form
Thi
enou
ten
beau
to o
us,
chas
was
W
Wh
this
verb
in op
ye,
and
If w
the
is th
man
pictu

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

A lampoon, or a satire, does not carry in them robbery or murder. Neither you nor she were mistaken in her conjectures. My sister and I, as well as my brother, are employed in their respective occupations. He repents him of that indiscreet action. It was me, and not him, that wrote it. A clock cannot go without a weight or spring. I shall take care that no one shall suffer no injury. Both Luther and Melancthon were sincere and zealous Reformers; but Luther was the most intrepid. This jacksonāpes has hit me in a right place enough. Two times two is four. Ten times ten is one hundred. It is her riches, not her beauty, that attracts so many suitors. To do to others as we would that they should do to us, it is our duty. This grammar was purchased at Ogle's the bookseller's. The council was not unanimous.

Who spilt the ink upon the table? Him. Who lost this book? Me. Whose pen is this? Johns. There is in fact no impersonal verbs in any language. He differs very much in opinion with his brother. Had I never seen ye, I had never known ye. The ship Mary and Ann were restored to their owners. If we consult the improvement of mind, or the health of body, it is well known exercise is the great instrument for promoting both. A man may see a metaphor or an allegory in a picture, as well as read them in a poem.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

I had no sooner placed her at my right hand, by the fire, but she opened to me the reason of her visit. A prudent wife, she shall be blessed. The house you speak of, it cost me five hundred pounds. Steady application, as well as genius, are necessary to eminence in the fine arts. Not only the counsel's and attorney's, but the judge's opinion also favoured his cause. It was the men's, women's, and children's lot, to suffer great calamities. Leaves serve the same purpose in the vegetable world, which lungs do amongst animals. This palace had been the grand Sultan's Mahomet. This clock is seldom or ever right. Though he behave never so well.

* I am purposed. He is arrived. They are deserted from their regiment. Whose works are these? They are Cicero, the most eloquent of men's. The mighty rivals are now at length agreed. The time of William making the experiment at length arrived. Let them be whom they may, we will boldly confront them. The group of islands were soon in sight. This picture of the king's does not much resemble him. These pictures of the king were sent to him from Italy. He who committed the offence, thou shouldst correct, not I, who am innocent.

* Rule. *It is improper to use a neuter verb in the passive form.* Thus, I am purposed—He is arrived: should be, I have purposed—He has arrived.—From this rule there are a number of exceptions; for it is allowable to say, He is come. She is gone. &c.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

But Thomas, one of the twelve, called Didymus, was not with the disciples at that time. These are observations, that a long and chequered pilgrimage have enabled me to make on man. After I visited Europe, I returned to America. To us is now addressed in the gospels our blessed Saviour's words. In his conduct was treachery, and in his words faithless professions. The orators did not forget to enlarge themselves on so popular a subject. He acted conformable with his instructions, and cannot be censured justly.

No person could speak stronger on this subject, nor behave nobler, than our young advocate, for the cause of toleration. They were studious to ingratiate with those who they believed to be the chief men of the tribe. The house framed a remonstrance, where they spoke with great freedom of the king's prerogative. Neither flatter or contemn the rich or the great. Many would exchange gladly their grandeur and riches, for that more quiet and humbler station, which thou art now dissatisfied with. He esteemed it a high honour to have been allowed to converse with the princes. Many persons will not believe but what they are free from prejudices. It is very masterly done. This word I have only found in Spenser. The king being apprized of the conspiracy, he fled from Jerusalem.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

A too great variety of studies dissipate and confuse the mind. James was resolved to not indulge himself in such a cruel amusement. They admired the rustic's, as they called him, candour and uprightness. The pleasure or pain of one passion differ from those of another. The court of Spain, who* gave the order, were not aware of the consequences. There was much spoke and wrote on either side of the question, but I know not which of the contending parties were in the right.

Religion raises men above themselves; irreligion sinks them beneath the brutes; that binds them down to a speck of perishable earth; this gives them wings to soar to the skies. Every element seemed to conspire towards the destruction of the ship. There were rugged precipices on either side of the river. This task was the easier performed, from the cheerfulness with which he embarked on it. It is easier to build two chimneys than maintain one. As his misfortunes were the fruit of his own obstinacy, a few persons pitied him. To these terms he had no objections to comply. Riches is the bane of many, and a blessing only to a few. I wrote to my brother before I received his letter.

* Which is applied to collective nouns composed of men.—See p. 155, mid.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

When Garrick appeared, Peter was for some time in doubt whether it could be him or not. Are you living contented in spiritual darkness? The company was very numerous. Every office of authority should be intrusted to persons on whom the public can confide. The shepherd was observed ascend the hill. You did not acquaint me with what you intended to have done. There remains but two obstacles to be surmounted. Nor let no comforter delight my ear. She was six years elder than him. They were obliged to contribute more than us. The Bãrons had little more to rely on, besides the power of their families. The sewers (shōres) must be kept so clear, as the water may run away. Such among us who follow that profession. Nobody is so sanguine to hope for it. She behaved unkindly than I expected. Agreeable to your request I send this letter. Thomas is not as docile as his sister. There was no other book but this. He died by a fever. Every man's heart and temper is productive of much joy or bitterness. What avails professions of sanctity without a holy life? The army were drawn up in haste. The public is respectfully informed, that, &c. His uneasiness, not to say his apprehensions, were shared by his followers. Who art thou who would oppose the king? Henry, though at first he showed an unwillingness, yet afterwards he granted his request.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Him and her live very happily together. She invited Jane and I to see her new dress. She uttered such cries that pierced the heart of every one who heard them. Maria is not as clever as her sister Ann. Though he promises ever so solemnly, I will not believe him. The full moon was no sooner up in its brightness, but she turned the dark waters of the lake into a mirror of silver. It rendered the progress very slow of the new invention. This book is Thomas', that is James'. Socrates's wisdom has been the subject of many a conversation. Fare thee well, James. Who, who has the judgment of a man, would have drawn such an inference? George was the most diligent scholar whom I ever knew. I have observed some children to use deceit. He durst not to displease his master. I trust I shall profit from your advice and by your example. Several of our English words, some centuries ago, had different meanings to those they have now. Take not away the life⁸⁶ you cannot give. With this booty he made off to a distant part of the country, where he had reason to believe that neither he nor his master were known. You should be happy; for yours is health, wealth, and wisdom too. I have been at London. Which is likely to tell the true time—the railway clock or your watch? Thompson, the watchmaker and the jeweller, from London were of the party.

W
estee
they
with
lash
howe
The
alwa
was
more
ent t
pleas
some
cours
repro
that
peace
Sh
her m
of the
nothin
girls
he ha
and th
from t
fucius
dange

* The
quotation
should be
crates, t

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Which of the two masters shall we most esteem? He who commends his scholars when they are diligent, and strives to inspire them with a generous emulation, or another who will lash them severely for every mistake or blunder, however slight, into which they have fallen? The doctor, in his last lecture, said that fever always produced thirst. Every person who was consulted were of this opinion. Mankind is more united by the bonds of friendship at present than it was formerly. The most perfect pleasures in this world are always mingled with some bitterness. The excellence of many discourses consist in their brevity. If you are reproved for your faults, be not angry with him that reproves you; but thank him for it. Your peace will be more unbroken.

She always behaved with great severity to her maids; and if any of them were negligent of their duty, or made a slip in their conduct, nothing would serve her but burying the poor girls alive. He had no master to instruct him; he had read nothing but the writings of Moses and the prophets, and had received no lessons from the Socrates's,* the Plato's, and the Confucius's of the age. There is no disease as dangerous as the want of common sense.

* The *Possessive case* must not be used for the *plural number*. In this quotation from Baron Haller's Letters to his Daughter, the proper names should have been pluralized like common nouns; thus, From the *Socrateses*, the *Platoes*, and the *Confuciuses* of the age.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

If it were not for the Bible and the pulpit, most of us would be still as ignorant of the true God and eternal life, if not more ignorant, than the idolaters of ancient Greece and Rome.

Every man that counts his minutes, and lets no part of time pass, without making a right use of it, him shalt thou imitate.

The Duke had not behaved with that loyalty as was expected.

Milton seems to have been well acquainted with his own genius, and known what it was that nature had bestowed upon him more bountifully than upon others.

John did not meet us at the hour he himself had appointed. We were shocked at his want of punctuality, and would afterwards have asked the cause.

He sought delights of a much more inferior and unprofitable nature. I saw nobody there which I knew, though, agreeable to your instructions, I have been constantly observant of all around me.

Here rages force, here tremble flight and fear,
Here storm'd contention, and here fury frowned
The Crétan javelin reach'd him from afar,
And pierced his shoulder as he mounts his car.

He only* promised me a loan of the book for two days. I was once thinking to have written a poem.

* This sentence expresses one meaning as it stands. It may be made to express other four by placing only after me, of loan, or book, or days.

A
to ge
times
as clo
In
style
No
tive
serve
peevi
his o
if he
or qu
Th
of bu
is equ

T

F

Th
the m
discrè
We
distan
havin
to the
these
with
very s

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

A slow but attentive child will often be found to get lessons by heart as soon as, nay sometimes sooner, than one who, though ten times as clever, is less industrious.

In his writings there are not only beauty of style, but originality of thought.

No man is likely to prove either an instructive or an agreeable companion, if he be reserved and taciturn; if he be fretful and peevish; if he be positive and dogmatical in his opinions; if he be given to self-display; if he affect wit, and is full of puns, or quirks, or quibbles.

Though he has neither books or the means of buying them, still, as far as I can judge, he is equal to most of us in general information.

Then finish, dear Chloe, this pastoral war,
And let us, like Horace and Lydia, agree;
For thou art a girl as much brighter than her,
As he was a poet sublimer than me.

There are many more shining qualities in the mind of man, but there is none so useful as discretion.

We need not to leave home and to traverse distant lands, to find marvels. Mr. Locke having been introduced by Lord Shaftesbury to the Duke of Buckingham and Lord Halifax, these three noblemen, instead of conversing with the philosopher on literary subjects, in a very short time sat down to cards.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Bad Arrangement.

They proposed to divide equally the spoil.
To man has been given the power of speech
only.

It is your light fantastic fools, who have neither heads nor hearts, in both sexes, who, by dressing their bodies out of all shape, render themselves ridiculous and contemptible.

And how can brethren hope to partake of their parent's blessing that curse each other?

The superiority of others over us, though in trivial concerns, never fails to mortify our vanity, and give us vexation, as Nicôle admirably observes.

Noah, for his godliness, and his family, were the only persons preserved from the Flood.

What hinge could the most skilful workman contrive that might be used as often and for so long a term of years without being disordered or worn out, as our elbow-joint.

The sun is larger greatly than this whole earth, though seemingly smaller than the dial it illuminates.

A great stone that I happened to find, after a long search, by the seashore, served me for an anchor.

*It is true what he says, but it is not applicable to the point.

On going to bed, we feel the blankets warm, on a winter night, and the sheets cold.

.Th
it she
grou
wher
Th
years
after
UP
Empe
tion,
who s
Ga.
again
revok
publis
before
The
his da
Pomp
But
compl
min w
both h
partne
Aur
and te
vaded

* The
of Goldm
It is amas
made.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Bad Arrangement.*

The senate of Rome ordered that no part of it should be rebuilt; it was demolished to the ground, so that travellers are unable to say where Carthage stood at this day. †

Thus ended the war with Antiochus, twelve years after the second Punic war, and two after it had been begun.

Upon the death of Claudius, the young Emperor, Nero, pronounced his funeral oration, and he was canonized among the gods, who scarcely deserved the name of a man.

Galērius abated much of his severities against the Christians on his death-bed, and revoked those edicts which he had formerly published, tending to their persecution, a little before his death.

The first care of Aurēlius was to marry his daughter Lucilla once more to Claudius Pompēianus, a man of moderate fortune, &c.

But at length, having made his guards accomplices in their designs, they set upon Maximin while he slept at noon in his tent, and slew both him and his son, whom he had made his partner in the empire, without any opposition.

Aurēlian defeated the Marcomanni, a fierce and terrible nation of Germany, that had invaded Italy, in three several engagements.

* The exercises on this page are all extracted from the octavo edition of Goldsmith's Roman History, from which many more might be got. It is amazing how many mistakes even our most popular authors have made.

20

021

AMBIGUITY.

You suppose him younger than I.

This may mean, either that you suppose him younger than I am, or that you suppose him to be younger than I suppose him to be.

Parmênio had served with great fidelity Philip, the father of Alexander, as well as himself, for whom he first opened the way into Asia.

Here we are apt to suppose the word *himself* refers to Parmênio, and means that he had not only served Philip, but he had served himself at the same time. This however is not the meaning of the passage. If we arrange it thus, the meaning will appear. "Parmênio had not only served Philip the father of Alexander with great fidelity, but he had served *Alexander himself*, and was the first that opened the way for him into Asia."

Belisarius was general of all the forces under the emperor Justinian the First, a man of rare valour.

Who was a man of rare valour? The *emperor Justinian*, we should suppose, from the arrangement of the words; but this is not the case, for it was *Belisarius*. The sentence should have stood thus, "Belisarius, a man of rare valour, was general of all the forces under the emperor Justinian the First."

Lisias promised to his father never to abandon his friends.

Whether were they his own friends or his father's whom Lisias promised never to abandon? If his *own*, it should be, "Lisias promised and said to his father, I will never abandon *my friends*. If his *father's*, it should be, Lisias promised and said to his father, I will never abandon *your friends*."

Tom
fully e

The †
When
I saw
He wa
Give n
They i
I never
You m
First o
Before
He plu
Read f
Lift †
This w
I ran a
I canno
Learn †
Where
We mu
I found
Smoke
We has
He rais
We wen
It shoul
As soon
I leave

fell to w
chalked
self sam
upon.
enough;
matter—

† The v
it is super

TAUTOLOGY.

Tautology, or the repetition of a thought or word, already fully expressed, is improper.

EXAMPLES.

The † *latter end* of that man shall be peace.

Whenever I try to improve, I † *always* find I can do it.

I saw it in *here*—I saw it *here*.

He was † in *here* yesterday when I spoke to him.

Give me *both of them* books—Give me *both those* books.*

They *both* met—They met.

I never fail to read, *whenever* I can get a book—*When*.

You must *return* † *back* immediately.

First of all I shall say my lesson—*First* I shall say, &c

Before I do that, I must † *first* finish this.

He *plunged* † *down* into the water.

Read from *here* to *there*—From *this* place to *that*.

Lift † *up* your book. He mentioned it † *over* again.

This was the luckiest accident of *all* † *others*.

I ran after him a little way; but soon returned † *back* † *again*.

I cannot tell † *for* *why* he did it.

Learn † *from* *hence* to study the Scriptures diligently.

Where shall I begin † *from* when I read.

We must do this *last* † of † *all*. *Hence* † *therefore*, I say.

I found nobody † *else* but him there.

Smoke *ascends* † *up* into the clouds.

We hastily *descended* † *down* from the mountain.

He *raised* † *up* his arm to strike me.

We were † *mutually* friendly to *each other*.

It should † *ever* be your *constant* study to do good.

As soon as I awoke I *rose* † *up* and dressed myself.

I leave town in the † *latter end* of July.

☞ *Avoid the following vulgar phrases.*—Behoof, behest, fell to work, wherewithal, quoth he, do away with, long winded, chalked out, pop out, must needs, got rid of, handed down, self same, pell mell, that's your sort, tip him the wink, pitched upon. — *Subject matter* is a tautological phrase. — *Subject* is enough; as, The *subject* of this discourse: and not the *subject matter*—which is harsh and vulgar.

* The word immediately after the dagger is to be omitted, because it is superfluous. * These, if the person has them in his hand

IMPROPER EXPRESSIONS.

My every hope,— <i>should be,</i>	<i>All my hopes.</i>
Frequent opportunity.	Frequent <i>opportunities.</i>
Who finds him in money?	Who finds him money?
He put it in his pocket.	He put it <i>into</i> his pocket.
No less than fifty persons.	No <i>fewer</i> than fifty persons.
The two first steps are new.	The <i>first two</i> steps are new.
The three last verses.	The <i>last three</i> verses.
Be that as it will.	Be that as it <i>may.</i>
About two years back.	About two years <i>ago.</i>
He was to come as this day.	He was to come this day.
They retreated back.	They retreated.
It lays on the table.	It <i>lies</i> on the table.
I turned them topsy turvy.	I <i>overset</i> them.
I caught it.	I <i>caught</i> it.
How does thee do?	How <i>dost thou</i> do?
Overseer over his house.	Overseer <i>of</i> his house.
Opposite the church.	Opposite <i>to</i> the church.
Provisions were plenty.	Provisions were <i>plentiful.</i>
A new pair of gloves.	A <i>pair of new</i> gloves.
A young beautiful woman.	A beautiful young woman
Where do you come from?	<i>Whence</i> do you come?
Where are you going?	<i>Whither</i> are you going?
For such another fault.	For another such fault.
Of consequence.	Consequently.
Having not considered it.	Not having considered it.
I had rather not.	I <i>would</i> rather not.
For good and all.	Totally and completely.
This here house, says I.	This house, <i>said</i> I.
Where is it? says I to him.	Where is it? <i>said</i> I to him.
I propose to visit them.	I <i>purpose</i> to visit them.
He spoke contemptibly of me.	He spoke <i>contemptuously</i> of me
It is apparent.	It is <i>obvious.</i>
In its primary sense.	In its <i>primitive</i> sense.
I heard them <i>pro</i> and <i>con.</i>	I heard <i>both</i> sides.
I an't hungry.	I <i>am not</i> hungry.
I want a scissors.	I want a <i>pair of</i> scissors.
A new pair of shoes.	A <i>pair of new</i> shoes.
I saw him some ten years ago.	I saw him ten years ago.
I met in with him.	I <i>met with</i> him.
The subject matter.	The subject. (<i>See</i> p. 139 near bot.)
I add one more reason.	I add <i>one reason more.</i>
He was in eminent danger.	In <i>imminent.</i>

Do y
His p
The
in k
They
It is r
A lett
He is
He be
The p
There
He ha
A mon
You w
Severa
He did
He doe
An hon
At the
If I ha
Have y
The coc
Are you
Were y
Direct y
He and
He took
He was
That mil
If I am r
You may
He propo
He pled
Have ye
I shall n
I think n
Will I he
They wa
Will we a
She think
It is not a
They are

IMPROPER EXPRESSIONS.

- Do you mind how many chapters are in Job?—*remember.*
 His public character is undeniable—*unexceptionable.*
 The wool is cheaper;—but the cloth is as dear as ever—*omit the*
in both places.
- They gained five shillings the piece by it—*a piece.*
 It is not worth a sixpence—*sixpence.*
 A letter conceived in the following words—*expressed.*
 He is much diffculted—*at a loss; puzzled.*
 He behaved in a very gentlemanly manner—*gentleman-like, or ly.*
 The poor boy was ill-guided—*led.*
 There was a great many com—*much company.*
 He has been misfortunate—*unfortunate.*
 A momentous circumstance—*momentous.*
 You will some day repent it—*one day repent of it.*
 Several were of that opinion—*several, i. e. several persons*
 He did it in an overly manner—*in a careless.*
 He does everything pointedly—*exactly.*
 An honestlike man—*A tall good-looking man.*
 At the expiry of his lease—*expiration.*
 If I had ever so much in my offer—*choice.*
 Have you any word to your brother?—*message*
 The cock is a noisy beast—*fowl.*
 Are you acquaint with him?—*acquainted.*
 Were you crying on me?—*calling.*
 Direct your letters to me at Mr. B.'s, Edinburgh—*address*
 He and I never cast out—*never quarrel.*
 He took a fever—*was seized with a fever.*
 He was lost in the river—*drowned (if the body was got).*
 That militates against your doctrine—*operates.*
 If I am not mistaken—*if I mistake not.*
 You may lay your account with opposition—*you may expect.*
 He proposes to buy an estate—*purposes.*
 He pled his own cause—*pleaded.*
 Have ye plenished your house?—*furnished.*
 I shall notice a few particulars—*mention.*
 I think much shame—*I am much ashamed.*
 Will I help you to a bit of beef?—*shall.*
 They wared their money to advantage—*laid out.*
 Will we see you next week?—*shall.*
 She thinks long to see him—*She longs to see him*
 It is not much worth—*it is not worth much.*
 They are all at issue—*at variance.*

IMPROPER EXPRESSIONS.

Is he going to the school?— <i>to school.</i>	Go and pull berries— <i>gather.</i>
He has got the cold— <i>a cold.</i>	Pull roses— <i>pluck or gather.</i>
Say the grace— <i>say grace.</i>	To harry a nest— <i>rob.</i>
I cannot go the day— <i>to-day.</i>	He begins to make rich— <i>grow.</i>
A four square table— <i>a square table.</i>	Mask the tea— <i>infuse.</i>
He is cripple— <i>lame.</i>	I was maltreated— <i>ill used.</i>
Get my big coat— <i>great coat.</i>	He wants much— <i>stammers.</i>
* Hard fish— <i>dried fish.</i>	I see'd him yesterday— <i>saw.</i>
A novel fashion— <i>new fashion.</i>	A house to set— <i>to be let</i> —K. p. 86, b.
He is too precipitant— <i>hasty.</i>	Did you tell upon him?— <i>inform.</i>
Roasted cheese— <i>toasted.</i>	Come here— <i>hither.</i>
Go over the bridge— <i>along.</i>	A house to sell— <i>to be sold</i> —K. p. 86
Sweet butter— <i>fresh.</i>	I knowed that— <i>knew.</i>
I have a sore head— <i>headache.</i>	That dress sets her— <i>becomes.</i>
A stupendous work— <i>stupendous.</i>	She turned sick— <i>grew.</i>
A tremendous work— <i>tremendous.</i>	He is turned tall— <i>grown.</i>
I got timeous notice— <i>timely.</i>	This here boy— <i>this boy.</i>
A summer's day— <i>summer day.</i>	It is equally the same— <i>it is the same</i>
An oldish lady— <i>elderly.</i> *	It is split new— <i>quite.</i>
A few broth— <i>some.</i> *	That there man— <i>that man.</i>
I have nothing ado— <i>to do.</i>	What pretty it is!— <i>how.</i>
Ass milk— <i>ass's.</i>	His is far neater— <i>much.</i>
Take a drink— <i>draught.</i>	That's no possible— <i>not.</i>
A pair of partridges— <i>a brace.</i>	I shall go the morn— <i>to-morrow.</i>
Six horse— <i>horses.</i>	I asked at him— <i>asked him.</i>
A milk cow— <i>milk.</i>	Is your papa in?— <i>within.</i>
Send me a swatch— <i>pattern.</i>	He was married on— <i>to.</i>
He lays in bed till nine— <i>lies.</i>	Come in to the fire— <i>nearer.</i>
I mind none of them things— <i>those.</i>	Take out your glass— <i>off.</i>
Give me them books— <i>these.</i>	I find no fault to him— <i>in.</i>
Close the door— <i>shut.</i>	Cheese and bread— <i>bread and cheese.</i>
Let him be— <i>alone.</i>	Milk and bread— <i>bread and milk.</i>
Call for James— <i>on</i> —p. 114 † b	Don't sit on the door— <i>near.</i>
Chap louder— <i>knock.</i>	Come, say away— <i>come, proceed.</i>
I find no pain— <i>feel.</i>	Do bidding— <i>be obedient.</i>
I mean to summons— <i>summon.</i>	He is a widow— <i>widower.</i>
Will I help you?— <i>shall.</i>	He stays there— <i>stays, dwells, lodges.</i>
Shall James come again?— <i>will.</i>	Shall they return soon?— <i>will.</i>
He has a timber leg— <i>a wooden.</i>	Will we go home now?— <i>shall.</i>
I ain't angry— <i>I am not.</i>	He misguides his book— <i>abuses.</i>
That there house— <i>that house.</i>	He don't do it well— <i>does not.</i>
I differ with you— <i>from.</i>	That stone lays well— <i>lies.</i>
I have ate enough— <i>eaten.</i>	I dissent with you— <i>from.</i>
Call for your uncle— <i>upon.</i>	I will stay at home— <i>shall.</i>
He has risen the price— <i>raised.</i>	See that he does it— <i>do it.</i>
That is not mine's— <i>mine.</i>	Where did you lay all night?— <i>lie</i>

* Broth is always singular.—Powdered beef is beef sprinkled with salt to preserve it for a few days. Salt beef is beef properly seasoned with salt

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

Additional Remarks under the 4th Rule of Syntax.

1. When *and* is understood, the verb must be plural; as wisdom, happiness, (and) virtue, *dwell* with the golden mediocrity.

Some think, that when two singular nouns, coupled with *and*, are nearly the same in meaning, the verb may be singular; as, Tranquillity and peace *dwells* there. Ignorance and negligence *has* produced this effect. This, however, is improper; for *tranquillity* and *peace* are two nouns or names, and two make a *plural*; therefore the verb should be plural.

2. Two or more singular nouns coupled with *and*, require a verb in the *singular* number, when they denote only *one* person or thing; as, That able scholar and critic *has* been eminently useful.

3. Many writers use a *plural noun* after the 2d of two numeral adjectives; thus, the first and second *pages* are torn. This I think improper; it should be, The first and the second *page*, *i.e.*, the first *page* and the second *page* are torn:—*are*, perhaps; because independently of *and*, they are *both* in a torn state.—*Generation*, *hour*, and *ward* are singular in Exodus xx. 5, Matt. xx. 5, Acts xii. 10.

And and Not.

4. When *not* is joined to *and*, the negative clause forms a parenthesis, and does not affect the construction of the other clause or clauses; therefore, the verb in the following and similar sentences should be singular. Genuine piety, and not great riches, *makes* a death-bed easy; *i.e.* Genuine piety

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

makes a death-bed easy, and great riches do not *make* it easy. Her prudence, not her possessions, *renders* her an object of desire.

Every, And.

5. When the nouns coupled with *and* are qualified by the distributive *Every*, the verb should be *singular*; as, Every man and woman *was* astonished at her fortitude. Every boy and girl *was* taught to read.—See Rule xxvii.

With and And.

6. When a *singular* noun has a clause joined to it by *with*, it is often difficult to determine whether the *verb* should be *singular* or *plural*, especially as our most reputable authors use sometimes the one and sometimes the other: for example, some would say, My uncle, with his son, *was* in town yesterday. Others would say, My uncle, with his son, *were* in town yesterday.

If we took the *sense* for our guide, we might expect the verb to be plural, as *uncle* and *son* are the *joint* subjects of our affirmation, but the grammatical construction certainly requires the verb to be *singular*.

When we perceive from the sense that the noun *before With* is *exclusively* the real subject, then the verb should be *singular*; thus, *Christ*, with his three chosen disciples, *was* transfigured on the mount. Here the verb is singular, because we know that none but Christ was transfigured; the disciples were not *joint* associates with him; they were mere spectators. There seems to be an ellipsis in such sentences as *this*, which, if supplied in the present,

wor
thro
U
sen
with
wh
to
adj
Th
say,
An
the
day
M
sho
"Pr
trul
C,
form
not
hum
hum
total
peri
amis
two
poss
tene
this,
pros
wher
In
is, n
itsel

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

would run thus : Christ, (when in company) with his three chosen disciples, was transfigured on the mount.

Upon the whole, it would be better, when the sense requires the verb to be in the plural, not to use *with* in these constructions, but to use *and*; and, when the sense requires the verb to be in the singular, to regard the phrase beginning with *with* as an adjective phrase, qualifying the preceding noun. Thus, in the first of the above examples, we should say, My uncle *and* his son *were* in town yesterday. Another way of overcoming the difficulty is to change the order, and to say, My uncle *was* in town yesterday, with his son.

Mr Murray maintains that the verb in such cases should always be singular, and gives as examples, "Prosperity, with humility, *renders* its possessor truly amiable." "The side A, *with* the sides B and C, *composes* the triangle." This is true. In the former sentence, the true nominative or subject is not "Prosperity" by itself, but "Prosperity with humility," that is, "Prosperity *when accompanied by* humility." The use of *and* here would give a totally different meaning. If it were said that "Prosperity and humility *render* their possessor truly amiable," the meaning would be that there are two things each of which separately renders its possessor truly amiable. The meaning of the sentence, however, is, not that prosperity always does this, not that humility always does this, but that prosperity renders its possessor truly amiable only when prosperity is accompanied by humility.

In the latter sentence, in like manner, the meaning is, not that "the side A" composes the triangle by itself, but that it does so when it is taken in con-

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

nection with the sides B and C. Here again, as in the former case, the true subject is not "the side A," but, "the side A with the sides B^a and C;" one thing does a certain work when conjoined with two other things. A change of construction would obviate all objections and difficulties. We should say, "The sides A, B, and C, compose the triangle."

Other examples are to be treated in the same way. "She *with* her sisters are well," should be "She *and* her sisters *are* well." "The general *with* his men *were* taken prisoners," should be "The general *and* his men." "The captain *with* his men catches negroes," is correct. It means, "The captain *with* the help of, or aided by, his men." In these last instances, the phrase introduced by *with* expresses instrumentality, and should therefore be connected with the verb which follows it, rather than with the noun which precedes it.

Of the Articles, with several Adjectives.

An or *a* and *the* are prefixed only to the first of several adjectives qualifying one noun; as, A meek and holy man: but the article should be repeated, before each adjective, when each adjective relates to a generic word applicable to every one of the adjectives. For example, "The black and white cows were sold yesterday; the red will be sold tomorrow."

Here cows is the *generic* word, applicable to each of the adjectives, *black*, *white*, and *red*, but for want of *the* before *white*, we are led to suppose that the *black* and *white* cows mean only *one* sort, which are speckled with spots of black and white; and if this is our meaning, the sen-

teno
the
inse
and
whi

S
and
writ
in o
be a
stan
nece
bald
ther
cow

T
Dem
artic
only
woul
othe

T
shou
Thos
viou
impr
neve
be h
thos
out
to n

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

tence is right; but if we mean *two* different sorts, the one all black and the other all white, we should insert the article before *both*; and say, *The black and the white cows, i. e.* The black cows and the white cows were sold.

Some think this distinction of little importance; and it is really seldom attended to even by good writers; but in some cases it is necessary, although in others there cannot, from the nature of the thing, be any mistake. In the following sentence, for instance, the repetition of *the* before *horned* is not necessary, although it would be proper. "The *bald* and *horned* cows were sold last week." Here there can be no mistake, *two* sorts were sold; for a cow cannot be bald and horned too.

The same remark may be made respecting the *Demonstratives* that has been made respecting the *articles*; as, "*That* great and good man," means only *one* man: but *that* great and *that* good man would mean *two* men; the one a *great* man, the other a *good*.

They—Those.

They stands for a noun already introduced, and should never be used till the noun be mentioned. *Those*, on the contrary, points out a noun not previously introduced, but generally understood. It is improper therefore to say, *They* who tell lies are never esteemed. *They* that are truly good must be happy. We should say, *Those* who tell lies, and *those* that are truly good; because we are *pointing out* a particular class of persons, and not referring to nouns previously introduced. A noun when not

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

expressed after *this, that, these, and those*, is always understood.

Another—One—Every.

Another corresponds to *one*; but not to *some* nor to *every*. Thus, "Handed down from *every* writer of verses to *another*," should be, From *one* writer of verses to *another*. "At *some* hour or *another*," should be, At *some* hour or *other*.

One is often used in familiar phrases (like *on* in French) for *we* or any *one* of us indiscriminately; Thus, *One* is often more influenced by example than by precept. The verb and pronoun with which *one* agrees should be *singular*. Thus, If *one* take a wrong method at first, it will lead *them* astray: should be, It will lead *one* astray, or it will lead *him* astray.

That and those.

It is improper to apply *that* and *those* to things *present* or *just mentioned*. Thus, "They cannot be separated from the subject which follows; and for *that* reason," &c., should be, And for *this* reason, &c.) "Those sentences which we have at present before us:" should be, *These*, or *the* sentences which we have, &c.

As Follows; as Appears.

As is often used as a Personal or a Relative pronoun, and in both *numbers*, and in these cases it should be construed as a pronoun; as, "His words were as *follow*," that is, His words were *those which* follow. Here *as* is *plural*, because *words*, its antecedent, is plural. His description was as *follows*. Here *as* is *singular*, because *description*, its antecedent, is singular; that is, His description was *this which* follows.

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

This account of *as*, though in unison with Dr. Crombie's, is at variance with that of Dr. Campbell and Mr. Murray. They explain the following sentences thus: "The arguments advanced were nearly *as follows*;" "The positions were, *as appears*, incontrovertible." That is, say they, "*as it follows*," "*as it appears*." What *it*? The *thing*. What thing? —*It*, or thing, cannot relate to *arguments*, for arguments is *plural* and *must* have a plural pronoun and verb. Take the ordinary method of finding out the nominative to a verb, by asking a question with the verb, and the true nominative will be the answer: Thus, What follows? and the answer is, The *arguments follow*. It must be obvious, then, that *it* cannot be substituted for *arguments*, and that *as* is equal to *those which*, and that the verb is not *impersonal* but the *third person plural*, agreeing with its nominative *which*, the last half of *as*. In the second example, *as appears*, is a mere parenthesis, and does not relate to *positions* at all; but still the *as* is a pronoun. Thus, the positions, *it appears*, were incontrovertible.

They say, however, if we use *such* before *as*, the verb is no longer *impersonal*, but agrees with its nominative in the *plural* number; as, "The arguments advanced were nearly *such as follow*." "The positions were *such as appear* incontrovertible." This is, if possible, a greater mistake than the former: for what has *such* to do with the following verb? *Such* means of *that kind*, and expresses the quality of the *noun* repeated, but it has nothing to do with the verb at all. Therefore the construction must be the same with *such* that it is with *as*, with

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

this difference in meaning, that when *such as* is used, we mean of *that kind* which follows.

When we say "His arguments are *as follow*," we mean *those* arguments which follow are *verbatim* the very *same* that he used. But when we say, "His arguments were *such as follow*," we convey the idea, that the arguments which follow are *not* the very *same* that he used; but that they are only of the same *nature* or *kind*.

Their position, however, that the verb should be plural, can be made out by a circumlocution, thus: "His arguments were nearly *such* arguments as those which follow are:" but this very solution would show the error into which they have fallen in such phrases as, *as follows, as appears*, for they will not admit of similar solutions. We cannot say, "His arguments are nearly as the arguments which *follows is*."*

This means, &c.

The word *means* in the singular number, and the phrases, *By this means, By that means*, are used by our best and most correct writers when they denote instrumentality; as, *By means of death, &c.* By *that means* he preserves his superiority.—Addison.

Good writers use the noun *mean* in the singular number only to denote *mediocrity, middle state, &c.* as, *This is a mean* between the two extremes.

This means and *that means* should be used only

* Addison and Steele have used a plural verb where the antecedent is *as* in plural. See Tatler, No. 62, 104.—Spec. No. 513. Dr. Campbell, in his *Philosophy of Rhetoric*, vol. ii. p. 7, has mistaken the construction of these phrases.

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

when they refer to what is singular; *these means* and *those means*, when they respect plurals; as, He lived temperately, and by *this means* preserved his health. The scholars were attentive, industrious, and obedient to their tutors; and by *these means* acquired knowledge.

Amends.

Amends is used in the same manner as *means*; as, Peace of mind is an honourable *amends* for the sacrifices of interest. In return, he received the thanks of his employers, and the present of a large estate: *these* were ample *amends* for all his labours.

Into, in.

Into is used after a verb of motion: and *in*, when motion or rest *in* a place is signified; as, They *cast* him *into* a pit; I walk *in* the park.

So and such.

When we refer to the *species* or *nature* of a thing, the word *such* is properly applied; as, *Such* a temper is seldom found; but when *degree* is signified, we use the word *so*; as, *So* bad a temper is seldom found.

Disappointed of, disappointed in.

We are *disappointed of* a thing when we do not get it, and *disappointed in* it when we have it, and find that it does not answer our expectations; as, We are often *disappointed in* things, which, before possession, promised much enjoyment. I have frequently desired their company, but have hitherto been *disappointed of* that pleasure.

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

Taste of, and Taste for.

A taste *of* a thing implies actual enjoyment of it; but a taste *for* it implies only a capacity for enjoyment; as, When we have had a true taste *of* the pleasures of virtue, we can have no relish *for* those of vice. He had a taste *for* such studies, and pursued them earnestly.

The Nominative and the Verb.

When the nominative case has *no personal* tense of a verb, but is put *before* a *participle*, independent of the rest of the sentence, it is called the *case absolute*; as, *Shame* being lost, all virtue is lost; *him* destroyed; *him* descending; *him* only excepted; —*him*, in all these places, should be *he*.

Every *Verb*, except in the infinitive mood or the participle, ought to have a *nominative* case, either expressed or implied; as, *Arise*, let us go home; that is, *Arise ye*.

Every *Nominative* case should belong to some *verb*, either expressed or implied; as, "To whom thus *Adam*," i. e. *spoke*. In the following sentence, the word *virtue* is left by itself, without any verb with which it might agree. "Virtue, however it may be neglected for a time, men are so constituted as ultimately to acknowledge and respect genuine merit:" it should be, However *much virtue may* be neglected, &c. The sentence may be made more elegant by altering the arrangement of the words: thus, Such is the constitution of men, *that virtue*, however much it may be neglected for a time, *will* ultimately be acknowledged and respected.—See Rule XIX.

The nominative is commonly placed *before* the

verb;
the au

The
these
books

Wh
They
blame

Wh
After

Wh
is imp
compa

Wh
name
court
name
was b

It i
tion;
was th
are th
would

The
noun
der; s

Adj
from t
meani
tinct
enoug
is freq
ties; s

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

verb; but it is sometimes put *after* it, or between the auxiliary and the verb.—See Parsing, No. e.

Them is sometimes improperly used instead of *these* or *those*; as, Give me *them* books, for *those* books, or *these* books.

What is sometimes improperly used for *that*; as, They will never believe but *what* I have been to blame; it should be, But *that* I have been, &c.

Which is often improperly used for *that*; thus, After *which* time; should be, After *that* time.

Which is applied to *collective* nouns when number is implied; as, The court of Spain *which*; the company *which*, &c.

Which, and not *who*, should be used after the name of a person used merely as a *word*; as, The court of Queen Elizabeth, *who* was but another name for prudence and economy; it should be, *which* was but another, or, *whose name* was, &c.

It is and *it was* are often used in plural construction; as, *It is* they that are the real authors. *It was* the heretics that first began to rail, &c.—*They* are the real authors. The *heretics* first began, &c. would perhaps be more elegant.

The neuter pronoun *it*, is frequently joined to a noun or pronoun of the masculine or feminine gender; as, *It was I*; *It was the man*.

Adjectives, in many cases, should not be separated from their nouns, even by words which modify their meaning; thus, A large enough number; a distinct enough manner; should be, A number large enough; a manner distinct enough. The *adjective* is frequently placed *after* the noun which it qualifies; as, Goodness *divine*; Alexander the *Great*.

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

All is sometimes emphatically put after a number of particulars comprehended under it; as, Ambition, interest, honour, *all* these concurred.

Never generally precedes the verb; as, I *never* saw him: but when an auxiliary is used, *never* may be placed either between it and the verb, or before both; as, He was *never* seen; or, he *never* was seen.

The *active participle* is frequently introduced without any obvious reference to any *noun* or *pronoun*; as, Generally *speaking* he behaves well. *Granting* his story to be true, &c. A pronoun is perhaps understood; as, *We* speaking; *We* granting.

Sometimes an *intransitive* verb has an objective, when the noun is of the same import with the verb; thus, to dream a *dream*; to run a *race*. Sometimes the noun after an intransitive verb is governed by a preposition understood; as, He lay six hours in bed, *i.e.* *during* six hours.

The same verbs are sometimes used as *transitive*, and sometimes as *intransitive*, according to the sense; thus, *Think*, in "*Think* on me," is *intransitive*; but it is *transitive* in "*Charity thinketh* no evil."

It is improper to change the form of the second or third person singular of the auxiliaries in the *compound tenses* of the subjunctive mood; thus, if thou *have* done thy duty. Unless he *have* brought money. If thou *had* studied more diligently. Unless thou *shall* go to-day. If thou *will* grant my request, &c.; should be, If thou *hast* done thy duty. Unless he *has* brought. If thou *hadst* studied. Unless thou *shalt* go, &c.

It
in th
Thus
subm
If th
Th
If
it.
Thou
be lo
migh

1.
piece
2.
to a q
3. l
ships,
4. "
writte
5. "
6. "
High,
7. "
places
8. T
a color
" Kno
9. C
gentle

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

It is improper to vary the second person singular in the *past* subjunctive (except the verb *to be*). Thus, If thou *came* not in time, &c. ; If thou *did* not submit, &c. ; *should be*, If thou *camest* not in time If thou *didst* not submit.

The following phrases are strictly grammatical.

If thou *knewest* the gift. If thou *didst* receive it. If thou *hadst* known. If thou *wilt* save her. *Though* he *hath* escaped the sea. *That* thou *mayst* be loved. We also properly say, If thou *mayst*, *mightst*, *couldst*, *wouldst*, or *shouldst* love.

Of Capitals.

1. The first word of every book, or any other piece of writing, must begin with a capital letter.
2. The first word after a period, and the answer to a question, must begin, &c.
3. Proper names, that is, names of persons, places, ships, &c.
4. The pronoun *I*, and the interjection *O*, are written in capitals.
5. The first word of every line in poetry.
6. The appellations of the Deity ; as, God, Most High, &c.
7. Adjectives derived from the proper names of places ; as, Grecian, Roman, English, &c.
8. The first word of a quotation, introduced after a colon ; as, Always remember this ancient maxim : " Know thyself."
9. Common nouns when personified ; as, Come gentle *Spring*.

FORMAL MODES OF ADDRESSING PERSONS OF TITLE, ETC.

THE ROYAL FAMILY.

Her Majesty the Queen is addressed The Queen's Most Excellent Majesty, *Madam*, or *May it please your Majesty*. The children of the Sovereign, and the children of the sons of the Sovereign, are addressed His or Her Royal Highness The Prince or Princess, or The Duke or Duchess of —, *Sir* or *Madam*, and are personally referred to as *Your Royal Highness*.

PEERS.

DUKES are addressed His Grace the Duke of —. Letters begin *My Lord Duke*, and he is personally referred to as *Your Grace*. **DUCHESSES** are addressed Her Grace The Duchess of —. Letters begin *Madam*, and she is personally referred to as *Your Grace*.

MARQUESSSES: The Most Honourable the Marquess of —, *My Lord Marquess, Your Lordship*. **MARCHIONESSES**: The Most Honourable The Marchioness of —, *Madam, Your Ladyship*.

EARLS, VISCOUNTS, BARONS: The Right Honourable the Earl of —, The Right Honourable Lord Viscount —, The Right Honourable Lord — (or less formally without Right Honourable), *My Lord, Your Lordship*. **COUNTESSES, VISCOUNTESSES, and BARONESES**: The Right Honourable The Countess —, The Right Honourable The Viscountess —, The Right Honourable Lady —, (or less formally without Right Honourable), *Madam, Your Ladyship*.

The title of *Right Honourable* is given to all the children of *Dukes and Marquesses*, to the *eldest* sons and *all* the daughters of *Earls*. The younger sons and the daughters of *Dukes and Marquesses* and the daughters of *Earls* have the title of *Lord* or *Lady*, thus: The Right Honourable Lord John —, Lady Jane —.

The *younger* sons of *Earls* and *all* the children of *Viscounts and Barons* are styled *Honourable*, and are thus addressed: The Honourable William —, *Sir*; The Honourable Mary —, or if married, The Honourable Mrs —, *Madam*.

BARONETS AND KNIGHTS.

Baronets are addressed thus: Sir A — B —, Bart., and letters begin with *Sir*. Knights are addressed, Sir C — D —, *Sir* (the word Knight is usually omitted except in formal documents). Baronets and Knights are addressed familiarly, *Dear Sir A —, Dear Sir C —*. Wives of Baronets and Knights, *Lady —, Madam, Your Ladyship*.

Titled
tion,

The titl

Her i

of th

the

Admi

Hono

Custo

The titl

Gove

Lord

Bart.

Minis

cellen

office

Grace

addre:

A —

The Ho

the L

Great

Lords

The Ho

the C

Irelan

your l

ARCHBIS

referr

BISHOPS

My Lo

ship.

Bishops

United

Rever

Archb

husban

DEANS:

Sir, or

ARCHDE

Sir, or

The gene

or, who

FORMS OF ADDRESS.

Titled persons in the Army or Navy use their official designation, such as *General*, before their title, thus: *General Lord* —, *Admiral the Honourable* —, *Colonel Sir* —.

The title of *Right Honourable* is given to all the members of Her Majesty's Most Honourable Privy Council, the Speaker of the House of Commons, the Lord Advocate of Scotland, the Lords Commissioners of the Treasury, and of the Admiralty. Other Government Boards are addressed, *The Honourable* The Commissioners of Inland Revenue, of Customs, etc.

The title *Excellency* is given to Ambassadors, Plenipotentiaries, Governors-General, and Governors of Colonies, and to the Lord Lieutenant of Ireland, thus: His Excellency Sir — Bart., Her Britannic Majesty's Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary to the Court of —, *Your Excellency*, *May it please your Excellency*. If the holder of the office is a Duke he is not addressed *His Excellency*, but *His Grace The Lord Lieutenant*. The wives of Ambassadors are addressed in the same way, Her Excellency The Countess A —, *Madam*.

The House of Peers is addressed thus: To the Right Honourable the Lords Spiritual and Temporal of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland in Parliament assembled, — *My Lords*, *May it please your Lordships*.

The House of Commons is addressed thus: To the Honourable the Commons of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland in Parliament assembled — *Gentlemen*, *May it please your Honourable House*.

THE CHURCH.

ARCHBISHOPS are addressed His Grace The Lord Archbishop of —. Letters begin *My Lord Archbishop*, and he is personally referred to as *Your Grace*.

BISHOPS: The Right Reverend The Lord Bishop of — *My Lord Bishop*, and is personally referred to as *Your Lordship*.

BISHOPS of the Episcopalian Church in Scotland and in the United States of America are addressed by name — The Right Reverend Bishop —, *Right Reverend Sir*. The wives of Archbishops and Bishops have no title in right of their husbands' official rank.

DEANS: The Very Reverend the Dean of —, *Very Reverend Sir*, or *Mr Dean*.

ARCHDEACONS: The Venerable the Archdeacon —, *Reverend Sir*, or *Mr Archdeacon*.

The general address to Clergymen is, Reverend A — B —, or, when his Christian name is unknown, Reverend Mr B —.

FORMS OF ADDRESS.

He, or *Reverend Sir*. Should he have received the degree of Doctor of Divinity, address thus: Reverend Doctor B—, or Rev. A— B—, D.D., *Reverend Sir*. If a Clergyman possess the title of *Right Honourable* or *Honourable*, it is prefixed to his clerical title thus: The Right Honourable and Reverend—; and if possessing title, The Honourable and Reverend Lord C— D—, Bishop of E—, Barons and Knights, The Reverend Sir F— G—, Bart.

Her Majesty's Commissioner to the General Assembly of the Church of Scotland is styled *His Grace the Lord High Commissioner*. The General Assembly itself is styled *The Venerable*, and its Moderator *The Right Reverend*. The Provincial Synods of the Church are styled *Very Reverend*; and Presbyteries, *Reverend*.

When Principals of Colleges in Scotland are clergymen they are styled *Very Reverend*. If a Principal or Professor in a University be a layman, he must be addressed according to his civil or academic rank, thus: Sir A— B—, or Dr C— D—, Principal of the University of E—, or Professor of — in the University of E—, *Sir*. In other cases he is simply styled *Esquire*, with the addition of any other degree, thus, F— G—, Esq., B.A., Professor, etc., *Sir*.

JUDGES.

The Lord Chancellor and The Lord Chief Justice are addressed as *The Right Honourable, My Lord*. The Master of the Rolls, *His Honour, Sir*. The Judges, The Honourable Mr Justice —, *Sir*. The Judges of the Court of Session in Scotland are addressed The Honourable Lord —, *My Lord*. Should these latter be Privy Counsellors, they are addressed as Right Honourable.

MUNICIPAL.

The title *Right Worshipful* is used in officially addressing the Sheriffs, Aldermen, and Recorder of London, and Mayors of all Corporations; and *Worshipful* is given to the Aldermen and Recorders of other Corporations, and to Justices of the Peace in England—*Sir, Your Worship*. The Lord Mayors of London, York, and Dublin, and the Lord Provost of Edinburgh have the title of *Right Honourable*, and are addressed *My Lord*.

Mr and *Esquire* are never both attached to the same name.

Of PUNCTUATION.

PUNCTUATION is the art of pointing a written composition in such a manner as to show its proper meaning and construction.

Of the Comma. [,]

RULE I.

A simple sentence in general requires only a full stop at the end; as, True politeness has its seat in the heart.

RULE II.

The simple members of a compound sentence are separated by a comma; as, Crafty men contemn studies, simple men admire them, and wise men use them. He studies diligently, and makes great progress.

RULE III.

The persons in a direct address are separated from the rest of the sentence by commas; as, *My Son*, give me thine heart. *Colonel*, Your most obedient. I thank you, *sir*. I am obliged to you, *my friends*, for your kindness.

RULE IV.

Two words of the same part of speech, whether nouns, adjectives, verbs, participles, or adverbs, do not admit of a comma between them, when coupled with a conjunction; as, James *and* John are good. She is wise *and* virtuous. Religion expands *and* elevates the mind. By being admired *and* flattered, she became vain. Cicero spoke forcibly *and* fluently. When the conjunction is suppressed, a comma is inserted in its place; as, He was a plain, honest man.

Of the Comma.

RULE V.

Three or more nouns, adjectives, verbs, participles, or adverbs, are separated by commas; as, The sun, the moon, and the stars, are the glory of nature.

When words follow in *pairs*, there is a comma between each *pair*; as, Truth is fair and artless, simple and sincere, uniform and constant.

RULE VI.

Explanatory phrases and clauses, in any part of a simple sentence, are separated from the other words by commas; as, *To confess the truth*, I was in fault. *His father dying*, he succeeded to the estate. The king, *approving the plan*, put it in execution. Paul, *the apostle of the Gentiles*, was eminent for his zeal and knowledge. Victoria, *queen of Great Britain*. I have seen the emperor, *as he was called*. *In short*, he was a great man.—See p. 162.

RULE VII.

The verb *to be*, followed by an adjective, or by an infinitive with adjuncts, is generally preceded by a comma; as, *To be diligently employed in the performance of real duty*, is honourable. One of the noblest of the Christian virtues, is to love our enemies.*

RULE VIII.

A comma is used between the two parts of a sentence that has its natural order inverted; as, *Him that is upright in his dealings*, honour ye.

* Some insert a comma both *before* and *after* the verb *to be* when it is near the middle of a long sentence, because the *pronunciation* requires it; but that is a bad reason; for pauses and points are often at variance.

Of the Comma.

RULE IX.

Any remarkable expression resembling a quotation or a command, is preceded by a comma; as, There is much truth in the proverb, *Without pains no gains.* I beseech you, *be honest.*

RULE X.

A relative clause is preceded by a comma when it is merely explanatory; but not when the clause is restrictive; or when the antecedent is a demonstrative; as, The first *beauty* of style is propriety, *without which* all ornament is puerile and superfluous. There is no *charm* in the female sex *that* can supply the place of virtue. It is *labour* only *that* gives the relish to pleasure. It is barbarous to injure *those from whom* we have received a kindness.

RULE XI.

A comma is often inserted where a verb is *understood*, and particularly before *not*, *but*, and *though*, in such cases as the following: John has acquired much knowledge; his brother, (has acquired) little. A man ought to obey reason, *not* appetite. He *was* a great poet, *but* a bad man. The sun is up, *though* he is not visible.

A comma is sometimes inserted between the two members of a *long* sentence connected by comparatives; as, Better is a little with a contented mind, than great wealth and much trouble with it. As thy diligence, so shall thy success be.

Of the Comma.

RULE XII.

It has been stated in Rule VI. that explanatory words and phrases, such as *perfectly, indeed, doubtless, formerly, in fine, &c.*, should be separated from the context by a comma.

Many adverbs, however, and even short phrases, when they are not merely parenthetical, should not be separated from the rest of the sentence by commas; as, *Be ye therefore upright. Peradventure I shall be at home. All things indeed decay. Doubtless thou art our friend. They were formerly very studious. He was at last convinced of his error. Be not on that account displeased with your son. Nevertheless I am no judge of such matters. Anger is in a manner like madness. At length some pity warmed the master's breast.*

These twelve rules respecting the position of the *comma*, include everything, it is presumed, to be found in the more numerous rules of larger volumes. But it is impossible to make them perfect. For, "In many instances, the employment, or omission of a comma, depends upon the length or the shortness of a clause; the presence or absence of adjuncts; the importance or non-importance of the sentiment. Indeed, with respect to punctuation, the practice of the best writers is extremely arbitrary; many omitting some of the usual commas when no error in sense or in construction is likely to arise from the omission. Good sense and attentive observation are more likely to regulate this subject than any mechanical directions."

The best general rule is, to point in such a manner as to make the sense evident.

No exercises have been subjoined to the Rules on punctuation; because none can be given equal to those the pupil can prescribe for himself. After he has learned the rules let him transcribe a piece from any good author, omitting the points and capitals; and then having pointed his manuscript, and restored the capitals, let him compare his own punctuation with the author's.

Of the Semicolon. [;]

The semicolon is used to separate two members of a compound sentence, especially when one of the members contains one or more commas.

Sometimes the two members have a mutual dependence on each other, both in sense and in syntax; sometimes the preceding member makes complete sense of itself, and only the following one is dependent; and sometimes both seem to be independent.

EXAMPLES.

Hasty and inconsiderate connections are generally attended with great disadvantages; and much of every man's good or ill fortune depends upon the choice he makes of his friends.

Trust not to fortune, nor to titled name,
To lead thee to the avenues of fame;
But let some nobler aim thy mind engage,
And sow in youth what thou wouldst reap in age.

Philosophy asserts, that Nature is unlimited in her operations; that she has inexhaustible stores in reserve; that knowledge will always be progressive; and that all future generations will continue to make discoveries, of which we have not the least idea.

The semicolon is sometimes employed to separate simple members in which even no commas occur: thus, The pride of wealth is contemptible; the pride of learning is pitiable; the pride of dignity is ridiculous; and the pride of bigotry is insupportable.

In every one of these members the construction and sense are complete; and a period might have been used instead of the semicolon; which is preferred merely because the sentences are short and form a climax.

Of the Colon. [:]

The colon is used when the first part of the sentence is complete in sense and construction; and when the following part is some remark naturally arising from it, and depending on it in sense, though not in construction; as, Study to acquire the habit of thinking: no study is more important.

A colon is generally used before an example or a quotation; as, The Scriptures give us an amiable representation of the Deity in these words: *God is love.* He was often heard to say: *I have done with the world, and I am willing to leave it.*

A colon is generally used where the sense is complete in the first clause, and the next begins with a conjunction *understood*; as, Do not flatter yourselves with the hope of perfect happiness: there is no such thing in the world. Had the conjunction *for* been expressed, a semicolon would have been used; thus, Do not flatter yourselves with the hope of perfect happiness; *for* there is no such thing in the world.

The *colon* is generally used when the conjunction is *understood*; and the *semicolon* when the conjunction is *expressed*.

Note.—This observation has not always been attended to in pointing the Psalms and some parts of the Liturgy. In them, a colon is often used merely to divide the verse, it would seem, into two parts, to suit a particular species of church music called *chanting*; as, "My tongue is the pen: of a ready writer." In *reading*, a caesural pause, in such a place as this, is enough. In the Psalms, and often in the Proverbs, the colon must be read like a semicolon, or even like a comma, according to the sense.

W
and
loss
but
A
tence
for,
cont
destr
A

Interru
Admir

Parent

Apostro

Caret (

Elyphen

l

v

Section

Paragr

Orotche

in

r

Quotati

v

Index (

Brace }

Ellipsis

Acute ac

Breves (

Diacresi

Asterisk

le

bo

(**) T

so

Dash (—

ex

co

Of the Period. [.]

When a sentence is complete in construction and sense, it is closed with a period; as, The loss of wealth may be regained; of health, recovered; but that of time can never be recalled.

A period is sometimes admitted between sentences connected by such words as *but, and, for, therefore, hence, &c.* Example: Good-will contributes to health of body. But envy tends to its destruction.

All abbreviations end with a *period*; as, A.D.

Of other Characters used in Composition.

Interrogation (?) is used when a question is asked.

Admiration or Exclamation (!) is used to express any sudden emotion of the mind.

Parentheses () are used to enclose some necessary remark in the body of another sentence; *commas* are now used instead of Parentheses.

Apostrophe (') is used in place of a letter left out; as, *earn'd* for *earned*.

Caret (^) is used to show that some word is either omitted or interlined.

Hyphen (-) is used at the end of a line, to show that the rest of the word is at the beginning of the next line. It also connects compound words; as, *Tea-pot*.

Section (§) is used to divide a discourse or chapter into portions.

Paragraph (¶) is used to denote the beginning of a new subject.

Crotchets or Brackets [] are used to enclose a word or sentence which is to be explained in a note, or the explanation itself, or to correct a mistake, or supply some deficiency.

Quotation (" ") is used to show that a passage is quoted in the author's words.

Index (☞) is used to point out anything remarkable.

Brace { is used to connect words which have one common term, or three lines in poetry having the same rhyme, called a triplet.

Ellipsis (—) is used when some letters are omitted; as, *K—g* for *King*.

Acute accent (´) is used to denote a *short* syllable; the *grave* (`) a *long*.

Breve (˘) marks a *short* vowel or syllable, and the dash (-) a *long*.

Dieresis (¨) is used to divide a diphthong into two syllables; as, *aërial*.

Asterisk (*), *Obelisk* (†), *Doubt's dagger* (‡) and *Parallels* (||) with small letters and figures, refer to some note on the margin, or at the bottom of the page.

(**) Two or three asterisks denote the omission of some letters in some bold or indelicate expression.

Dash (—) is used to denote a *abruptness*—a significant pause—an unexpected turn in the sentiment—or that the *first* clause is common to all the rest, as in *this definition* of a dash.

ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>Latin.</i>	<i>English.</i>
Ante Christum*	A.C. or B.C. Before Christ
Artium Baccalaureus	A.B. or B.A. Bachelor of Arts
Anno Domini	A.D. In the year of our Lord
Artium Magister	A.M. or M.A. Master of Arts
Anno Mundi	A.M. In the year of the world
Ante Meridiem	A.M. In the forenoon.
Baccalaureus Divinitatis	B.D. Bachelor of Divinity
Baccalaureus Medicinæ	B.M. Bachelor of Medicine
Chirurgiæ Magister	C.M. Master in Surgery
Divinitatis Doctor	D.D. Doctor of Divinity
Et Cætera	&c. And the rest; and-so forth
Exempli gratia	e.g. For example
Id est	i.e. That is
Instante	Inst. Of the present (month)
Iesus Hominum Salvator	I.H.S. Jesus the Saviour of Men
Legum Doctor	L.L.D. Doctor of Laws
Medicinæ Doctor	M.D. Doctor of Medicine
Nota Bene	N.B. Note well; Take notice
Philosophiæ Doctor	Ph.D. Doctor of Philosophy
Post Meridiem	P.M. In the afternoon
Post Scriptum	P.S. Postscript; something written after
Proximo	prox. In the next (month)
Regiæ Societatis Socius	F.R.S. Fellow of the Royal Society
Requiescat in pace	R.I.P. May he rest in peace
Scientiæ Doctor	Sc.D. Doctor of Science
Societatis Antiquariorum Socius	F.S.A. Fellow of the Society of Antiquaries
Ultimo	Ult. Last (month)
Victoria Regina	V.R. Victoria the Queen
<hr/>	
Acct. Account	C.A. Chartered Accountant
Bart. Baronet	C.B. Companion of the Bath
Bp. Bishop	D.C.L. Doctor of Civil or Canon Law
Capt. Captain	G.C.B. Knight Grand Cross of the Bath
Col. Colonel	G.C.M.G. Knight Grand Cross of St Michael and St George
Cr. Creditor	G.C.S.I. Grand Commander of the Star of India
Dr. Debtor, Doctor	H.R.H. His or Her Royal Highness
Do. or Ditto. The same	K.C.B. Knight Commander of the Bath
J.P. Justice of the Peace	K.C.M.G. Knight Commander of St Michael and St George
Knt. Knight	K.C.S.I. Knight Commander of the Star of India
K.G. Knight of the Garter	M.P. Member of Parliament
K.P. Knight of St. Patrick	MS. Manuscript.—MSS. Manuscripts
K.T. Knight of the Thistle	S.S.C. Solicitor before the Supreme Courts
O.S. Old Style	W.S. Writer to Her Majesty's Signet
P.C. Privy Councillor	
R.N. Royal Navy.	
U.S. United States	
Viz. Namely	

* The *Latin* of these abbreviations is inserted, not to be got by heart, but to show the etymology of the *English*; or explain, for instance, how *P.M.* comes to mean afternoon, &c.—† Contraction of *videlicet*.

PRO
of u
tity,
of V

Acc
word

The
in pro
sume.

Em
a sent
mean
knowl

A I
voice,
full-m
man.

Tow
suited
shine!

Pros
number

Vers
long an

Vers
When t

* Em
after the
disagree
it still n

† Acc
and pau
ings of t

PROSODY.

PROSODY treats of the true sound or pronunciation of words and sentences; comprising *Accent, Quantity, Emphasis, Pause, and Tone, and the measure of Verses.*

Accent is the laying of a greater force on one syllable of a word than on another; as, *Surmount*.

The *Quantity* of a syllable is that time which is occupied in pronouncing it. Quantity is either short or long, as, *Côn-sûme*.

Emphasis is a remarkable stress laid upon certain words in a sentence, to distinguish them from the rest, by making the meaning more apparent; as, Apply yourself more to acquire knowledge than to show it.*

A *Pause* is either a total cessation or a short suspension of the voice, during a perceptible space of time; as, Reading—makes a full-man; conference—a ready-man; and writing—an exact-man.

Tone is a particular modulation or inflection of the voice, suited to the sense, as, How bright these glorious spirits shine! † Have pity upon me, have pity upon me, O my friends.

Versification.

Prose is language not confined to harmonic sounds, or to a set number of syllables.

Versè, or *Poetry* is language confined to a certain number of long and short syllables in every line.

Verse is of *two kinds*; namely, *Rhyme* and *Blank* verse. When the last syllable of every two lines has the same sound,

* *Emphasis* should be made rather by *suspending* the voice a little after the emphatic word, than by striking it very forcibly, which is disagreeable to a good ear. A very short pause before it would render it still more emphatical; as, Reading—makes a—full—man.

† *Accent* and *quantity* respect the pronunciation of words; *emphasis* and *pause* the meaning of the sentence; while *tone* refers to the feelings of the speaker.

it is called *rhyme*; but when this is not the case, it is called *blank verse*.

*Feet** are the parts into which a verse is divided, to see whether it has its just number of syllables or not.

Scanning is the measuring or dividing of a verse † into the several feet of which it is composed.

All feet consist either of *two* or of *three* syllables, and are reducible to eight kinds; four of two syllables, and four of three, as follow:

Dissyllables.

- A trôchêe; as, lövelÿ. ‡
- An iambus; bêcâme.
- A spondee; väin mân.
- A pyrrhic; ðn ä (bank).

Trisyllables.

- A dactyle; as, próbäbly.
- An amphibrach; dömästic.
- An anapaest; misimpröve.
- A tribrach; (com)förtäbly.

The feet in most common use are, Iambic, Trochæic, and Anapaestic.

Iambic Measure.

Iambic measure is adapted to serious subjects, and comprises verses of several kinds; such as;

1. *Of four syllables, or two feet; as,*

With rä-v-ish'd ears
Thë Mön-ärch hears.

It sometimes has an additional short syllable, making what is called a double ending; as,

Upön-ä möun-täfn,
Bëside-ä föun-täfn.

* So called from the resemblance which the movement of the tongue in reading verse, bears to the motion of the feet in walking.

† A single line is called a verse. In *rhyme*, two lines are called a couplet; and three ending with the same sound, a triplet.

‡ The marks over the vowels shew that a Trochee consists of a long and a short syllable, and the Iambic of a short and a long, &c.

¶ In scanning verses, every accented syllable is called a long syllable; even although the sound of the vowel in pronunciation be short. Thus the first syllable in *rav-ish'd* is in scanning called a long syllable, although the vowel *a* is short. By long then is meant an accented syllable; and by short, an unaccented syllable.

2. *Of three iambs, or six syllables; as,*
 Alöft - In äw-fül stäte,
 Thē göd-like hē-rö sät,
 Öür heärts - no long-ër län—guish. An additional
 syllable.

3. *Of eight, syllables, or four iambic feet; as,*
 And mäs - ät läst - mÿ wēa-rÿ. age,
 Fÿnd öüt - thē pēace-fül hēr-mitäge.

4. *Of ten syllables, or five feet; called pentameter, heroic, or
 tragic verses; as,*

Thē stärs - shäll fäde - äwäy, - thē sün - hÿmsëlf
 Gröw dÿm - wÿth äge, - änd nä-türe sink - In yēars

*Sometimes the last line of a couplet is stretched out to twelve
 syllables, or six feet, and then it is called an Alexandrine
 verse; as,*

För thē - thē länd - In frä-gränt flöw'rs - Is dröst;
 För thē - thē ö-ceän smiles, - änd smööths - hēr wä-vÿ
 bräst.

6. *Of verses containing alternately four and three feet this is
 the measure commonly used in psalms and hymns; as,*

Lët säints - bēlöw, - wÿth swēet - äccörd,
 Unite - wÿth thöse - äböve,
 In sö - lëmn läys, tö präise - thëir kÿng,
 And sÿng - hÿs dÿ-ÿng löve.

Verses of this kind were anciently written in two lines, each
 containing fourteen syllables.

Trochaic Measure.

This measure is quick and lively, and comprises verses,

1. *Some of one trochee and a long syllable, and some of two
 trochees; as,*

Tümült - cēase,
 Sink tö - pēace.

On thē - möūtain,
 By ä - föūtain.

2. *Of two feet, or two trochees, with an additional long syllable; as,*

Hi thē - dāys ōf - - ōld,
Stōriēs - plāinlŷ - - tōld.

3. *Of three trochees, or three and an additional long syllable; as,*

Whēn ōur - heārts āre - mōurnīng,
Lōvelŷ - lāstīng - pēace ōf - - mīnd,
Swēēt dē - light ōf - hūmān - - kīnd.

4. *Of four trochees, or eight syllables; as,*

Nōw thē - drēadfūl - thūndēr's - rōārīng

5. *Of six trochees, or twelve syllables; as,*

Op ā - mōūntāin, - strētch'd bē - nēath ā - hōārŷ - willōw,
Lāŷ ā - shēphērd - swāin, ānd - viēw'd thē - rōārīng-billōw.

Those trochaic measures that are very uncommon have been omitted.

Anapaestic Measure.

1. *Of two anapaests, or two and an unaccented syllable; as,*

Būt hīs cōūr-āge 'gān fāil,
Fōr nō ārts - cōūld āvāil.

Or, Then his cour-age 'gan fail - - hīm,
For no arts - could avail - - hīm.

2. *Of three anapaests, or nine syllables; as,*

O ŷē wōōds - sprēad ŷōūr brānch-ēs āpāce,
Tō ŷōūr dēēp-ēst rēcēss-ēs I-flŷ;
I wōūld hīde - with thē bēasts - ōf thē chāno,
I wōūld vān-ish frōm ēv-ērŷ ēŷe.

Sometimes a syllable is retrenched from the first foot; as,

ŷē shēp-hērds sō cheēr-fūl ānd gāŷ,
Whōse flocks - nāvēr cāre-lēsslŷ rōām.

1. *Of f*
Tis
You

Sometim
On th

The 1
in their
variation
Seconda
Spon/A

Time
Whē
Shē ā
Innū
Thāt

A Figur
word or
ferent fr

Pe
Sin
Me
Al
Hy
Iro
Me

* *Iambus*
because pie
them. The
use is to di

1. *Of four anapaests, or twelve syllables; as,*

'Tis the voice - of the slüg-gärd; I hear - him cömpläin.
Yöu häve wäk'd - më töð söön, - I müst slüm-bër ägäin.

Sometimes an additional short syllable is found at the end; as,

On the wärm - chëek öf yöuth, - smiles änd rös-ës äre blënd-ing.

The preceding are the different kinds of the Principal feet, in their more simple forms; but they are susceptible of numerous variations, by mixing them with one another, and with the Secondary feet. The following lines may serve as an example:—*

Spon. Amph. Dact. Iam.

Time shäkes - thë stäblë - tÿrännÿ - öf thrönes, &c.

Whëre is - tö-mörröw? - in änöth-ër wörlð.

Shë äll - nìght löng - hër äm-örouš dës-cänt süng.

Innü-mëräblë - bëföre - th' Almìgh-tÿ's thröne.

Thät ön - wëäk wings - fröm fär - pürsües - yöür flight

FIGURES OF SPEECH.

A *Figure of Speech* is a mode of speaking, in which a word or sentence is to be understood in a sense different from its most common and literal meaning.

The principal Figures of Speech are,

Personification
Similë,
Metaphör,
Allegory,
Hy-për-bö-lë,
Irony,
Metonymy,

Sÿ-nëc'do-chë,
Antithesis,
Climax,
Exclamation,
Interrogation,
Paralepsis,
Apostrophë.

* *Iambus, trochee, and anapaest, may be denominated principal feet; because pieces of poetry may be wholly or chiefly formed of any of them. The others may be termed secondary feet, because their chief use is to diversify the numbers; and to improve the verse.*

Prosopopœia or *Personification* is that figure of speech by which we attribute life and action to inanimate objects; as, *The conscious Water saw its Lord and blushed.*

A *Similè* expresses the resemblance that one object bears to another; as, *The sovereign like a pillar supports the state.*

A *Metaphor* is a simile without the sign (*like* or *as*, &c.) of comparison; as, *The sovereign is the pillar of the state.*

An *Allegory* is a continuation of several metaphors, so connected in sense as to form a kind of parable or fable; thus, the people of Israel are represented under the image of a vine; *Thou hast brought a vine out of Egypt, &c.* Ps. lxxx. 8 to 17.

An *Hÿ-për'-bo-lè* is a figure that represents things as greater or less, better or worse, than they really are; as, thus we say of Saul and Jonathan, *They were swifter than eagles, they were stronger than lions.*

Irony is a figure by which we mean quite the contrary of what we say; as when we say, in a particular tone of voice, to a dishonest man, *Yes, you are a very honest man.*

A *Metonymy* is a figure by which we put the cause for the effect, or the effect for the cause; as, when we say, *He reads Milton*; we mean *Milton's Works.* *Grey hairs* should be respected, i. e. *old age.*

Sÿnecdochè is the putting of a *part* for the *whole* or the *whole* for a *part*, a *definite number* for an *indefinite*, &c., as, *The waves* for the *sea*, the *head* for the *person*, and *ten thousand* for any *great number.* This figure is nearly allied to *metonymy.*

An
ferent
them
go do
while
good.

*Cl

stance
place
good,
in obe

Exc

some
tendern
dying c

Inter

the em
by prop
submiss
teach hi
truly pi

Para

speaker
claring
once a
process
not to
that he
constitut

Apost

address
ligion has
her place

*C
M

Antithesis or *Contrast* is a figure by which different or contrary objects are contrasted, to make them show one another to advantage: thus, *Some go down to the grave with the workers of iniquity; while others rise to heaven with the virtuous and the good.*

**Climax* is the heightening of all the circumstances of an object or action, which we wish to place in a strong light: as, *To profess religion is good, to feel the sentiment is better, but to practise it in obedience to the divine command is the best of all.*

Exclamation is a figure that is used to express some strong emotion of the mind; as, *Oh the tenderness of a virtuous mother's heart towards her dying child!—its father far away!*

Interrogation is a figure by which we express the emotion of our mind, and enliven our discourse by proposing questions: thus, *If you teach your son submission, will he not yield you obedience? If you teach him religion, will he not be pious? and if he be truly pious, will he not be happy?*

Paralepsis or *omission* is a figure by which the speaker pretends to conceal what he is really declaring and strongly enforcing: as, Horatius was once a very promising young gentleman; but, in process of time, he became so addicted to gaming, *not to mention his drunkenness and debauchery*, that he soon exhausted his estate, and ruined his constitution.

Apostrophē is a turning off from the subject to address some other person or thing: as, *True Religion has fled the land, and Thou, Hypocrisy, usurpest her place.*

* Climax, Amplification, Enumeration, or Gradation.

EXERCISES.

Point out the Figures of Speech.

As for man, his days are as grass; as a flower of the field, so he flourisheth. The world is vain and inconstant; life is fleeting and transient: O sons of men, when will ye learn to think of it as ye ought? A flood of ignorance and misery and sin now breaks and roars above the top of the highest tenements. The jewels in her crown shone with the brilliancy of the sun. No useless coffin enclosed his breast. The mountains skipped like rams, and the little hills like lambs. No doubt but ye are the people, and wisdom will die with you! What a piece of work is man! how noble in reason! how infinite in faculties! in form and motion how express and admirable; in action how like an angel; in apprehension how like a god! Can stoned urn or animated bust back to its mansion call the fleeting breath? The billows rocked themselves to sleep to the music of gentle zephyrs. How unspeakably sad I felt as I visited the scenes of my boyhood and found myself a stranger in a strange land! The sun hid himself behind heavy clouds, and smiled upon us no more that day. I say nothing of cowardice or of neglect of duty; it is enough that I consider you unfit for the post. Quick as lightning, he darted upon his adversary with his dagger, and buried it in his heart. If you do not set your son a good example, how can you expect him to lead a virtuous life? He has twice abandoned his party, but never his

pr
in
ear
son
for
five
pla
nov
my
The
obs
to
sche
than
over
by
crow
Cha
whic
prop
with
obed
foll
coun
Shak
night

He i
and t
the d
reckl
crime

principles. In a few years at most, it may be in a few days, the sun shall see us no more and earth will claim its kindred dust. One of his sons is studying for the church, and another for the bar. Here my fathers have lived for five generations; here they lie buried; here I played as a child and laboured as a man; but, now, farewell happy fields; farewell home of my ancestors: I shall never see you more! The dew of benevolence falls silently but unobserved, seeking not to attract attention, but to do good. He must have been a diligent scholar, for he did not require correction oftener than five times a day! His eloquence was so overpowering that the very walls were moved by his arguments. Where shall we find a crown rich enough for so great a monarch? Charity, like the sun, brightens every object on which it shines. There is no enjoyment of property without government; no government without a magistrate; no magistrate without obedience; and no obedience where every one follows his own sweet will. God made the country, and man made the town. He reads Shakespeare in the morning, and Milton at night.

O what a tangled web we weave
When first we practise to deceive!

He invaded France with sixty thousand foot, and twelve thousand horse. War stalked over the land, and deluged its fields with blood. His reckless extravagance—to say nothing of his crimes—made him an outcast and a beggar.

As the following words and phrases, from the French and Latin, frequently occur in English authors, an explanation of them has been inserted here, for the convenience of those who are unacquainted with these languages. Let none, however, imagine, that by doing this I intend to encourage the use of them in English composition. On the contrary, I disapprove of it, and aver, that to express an idea in a foreign language, which can be expressed with equal perspicuity in our own, is not only pedantic, but highly improper. Such words and phrases, by being frequently used, may, notwithstanding the uncouthness of their sound and appearance, gradually incorporate with our language, and ultimately diminish its original excellence, and impair its native beauty.

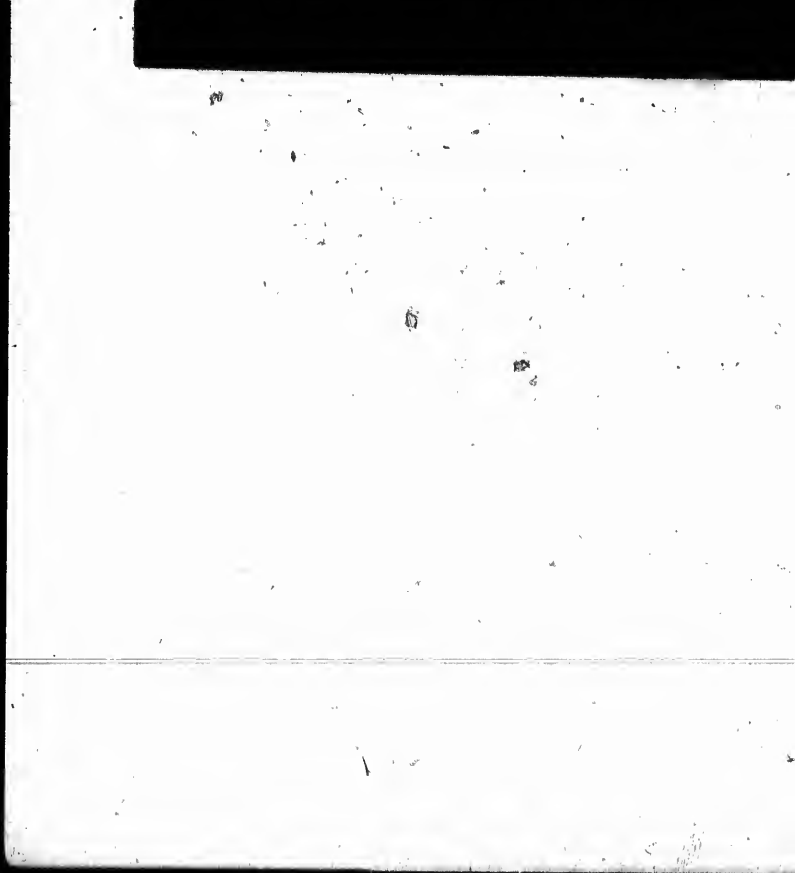
- A la bonne heure, a la bon oor', *luckily; in good time.*
 A la mode, a la mod', *according to the fashion.*
 A propos, ap-prô-poz', *the purpose; opportunely.*
 Affaire de cœur, a-fair de koor', *a love affair; an amour*
 Afin, a feng, *to the end.*
 Aide-de-camp, a-id de kapp', *an assistant to a general.*
 Au fond, o fong', *to the bottom, or main point.*
 Auto da fé, ô-tô-da fâ (*Portuguese*), *burning of heretics.*
 Bagatelle, bag-a-têl', *a trifle.*
 Beau monde, bô mongd', *the gay world, people of fashion.*
 Beaux esprits, bôz es-pree, *men of wit.*
 Billet-doux, bil-le-dû', *a love-letter.*
 Bivouac, be-voo-ak', *to watch, to continue all night under arms without shelter.*
 Bon gré, mal gré, bong grâ, &c., *with a good or ill grace whether the party will or not.*
 Bon jour, bong zhûr, *good-day; good-morning.*
 Bon-mot, bong mô, *a piece of wit, a jest.*
 Bon ton, bong tong, *high fashion.*
 Boudoir, bû-dwâr', *a small private apartment.*
 Carte blanche, kart blangsh', *a blank: unconditional terms.*
 Château, sha-tô', *a country seat.*

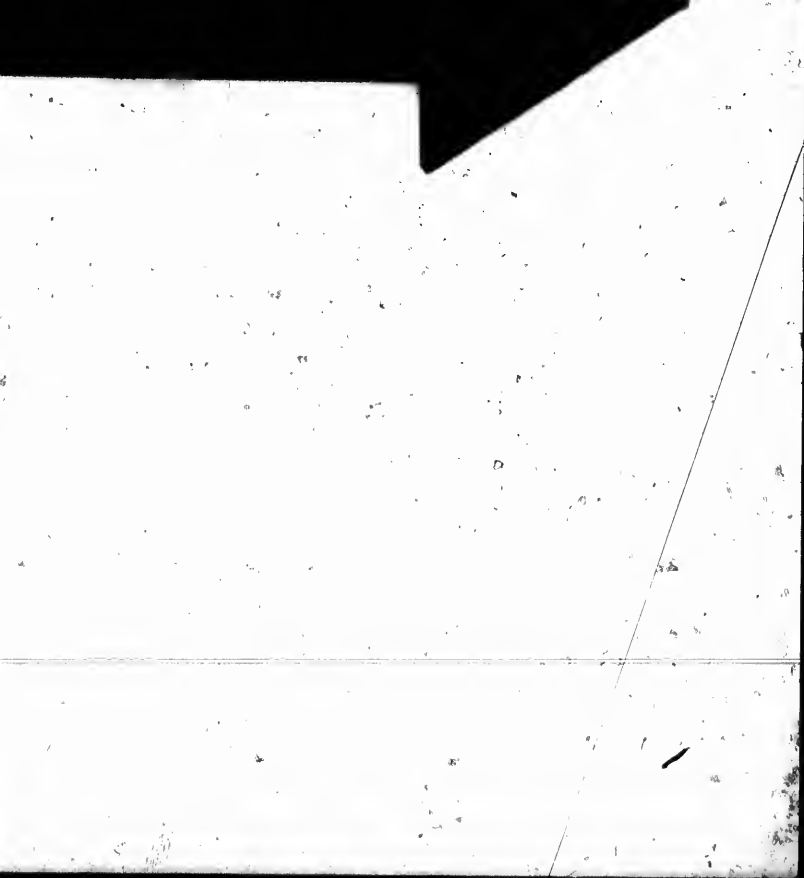
Short vowels are left unmarked;—û is equal to u in rule;—ï to a in *ert*; oo, as used here, has no correspondent sound in English; it is equal to u, as pronounced by the common people in many counties of Scotland, in the word *gude*; ê is equal to a in all.

* A is not exactly a long here; it is perhaps as near e in *met* as a in *make*, but a will not be so readily mistaken. It is impossible to convey the pronunciation accurately without the *tongue*.

Chef
 Ci-d
 Com
 Con
 Cong
 Cort
 Coup
 Coup
 Coup
 Débu
 Dépô
 Dern
 Douh
 Douc
 Dieu
 Eclat
 Elève
 En b
 En m
 En pa
 Ennu
 Faux
 Fête,
 Fraca
 this
 Haute
 Honi
 Je ne
 Jeu de
 Jeu d'
 Mal-à
 Mauva
 Mot du
 Naïvet
 Outré,
 Petit n
 Protég
 Rouge
 Sang f
 Sans, s
 Savant
 Soi-dis
 Survei

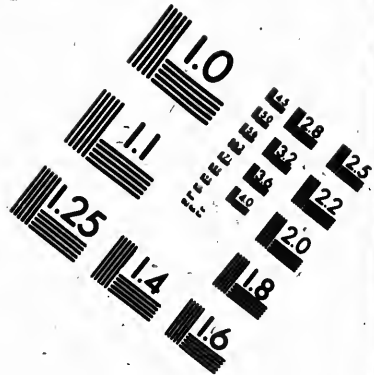
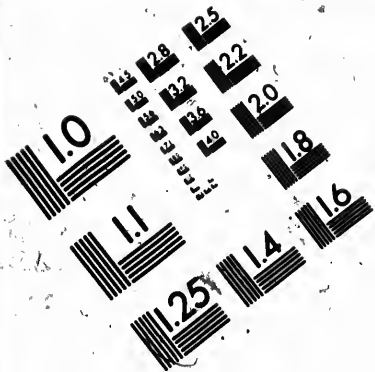
- Chef d'œuvre, she doo'vr, a masterpiece.
 Ci-devant, sê-de-vang', formerly.
 Comme il faut, com-il fô, as it should be. [of affection.
 Con amore, con-a-mo'rê (Italian), with love; with the partiality
 Congé d'élire, kong-zhâ de-leer', leave to elect or choose.
 Cortège, kor-tâzh', a train of attendants.
 Coup de grâce, kù-de grâss', a stroke of mercy; the finishing stroke
 Coup d'œil, kù-dâ-ê, a peep; a glance of the eye.
 Coup de main, kù-de-mang', a sudden or bold enterprise.
 Début, de-boo', first appearance in public.
 Dépôt, dê-pô', a storehouse or magazine.
 Dernier ressort, dern'-yâ-res-sor', the last shift or resource.
 Double entendre, dûbl ang-tang'dr, double meaning, one in an
 Douceur, dû-soor', a present or bribe. [immodest sense.
 Dieu et mon droit, dyoo'e-mong-drwâ, God and my right.
 Eclat, e-klâ, splendour; applause.
 Elève, e-lâv', pupil.
 En bon point, ang-bong-pwang', in good condition; jolly.
 En masse, ang mass, in a body or mass.
 En passant, ang-pas-sang', by the way; in passing; by the bye.
 Ennui, eng-nûee, wearisomeness; lassitude; tediousness.
 Faux pas, fô-pâ, a slip; misconduct.
 Fête, fet, a feast or entertainment.
 Fracas, fra-câ, bustle; a slight quarrel; more ado about the
 thing than it is worth.
 Hauteur, ho-toor, haughtiness. [him that evil thinks.
 Honi soit qui mal y pense, hô-nê-swâ'kê-mâl ê pang's, evil be to
 Je ne sais quoi, zhe ne sâ kwâ, I know not what.
 Jeu de mots, zhoo de mô, a play upon words.
 Jeu d'esprit, zhoo de-spree, a display of wit; a witticism.
 Mal-à-propos, mal ap-ro-pô, unfit; out of time or place.
 Mauvaise honte, mô-vâz-hônt', false modesty.
 Mot du guet, mô doo gâ, a watchword.
 Naïveté, na-iv-tâ, ingenuousness, simplicity, innocence.
 Outré, ô-trâ, eccentric; blustering; wild; not gentle.
 Petit maître, pe-tê mâ'tr, a beau; a fop.
 Protégé, pro-tâ-zhâ, a person patronized and protected.
 Rouge, rûzh, red, or a kind of red paint for the face.
 Sang froid, sang frwâ, cold blood; indifference.
 Sans, sang, without.
 Savant, sa-vang, a wise or learned man.
 Soi-disant, swâ-dê-zang', self-styled; pretended.
 Surveillance, sur-ve-lângs', superintendence, keeping an eye upon.



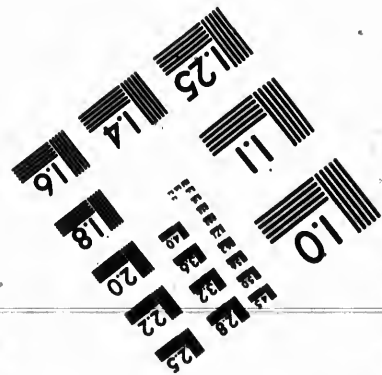
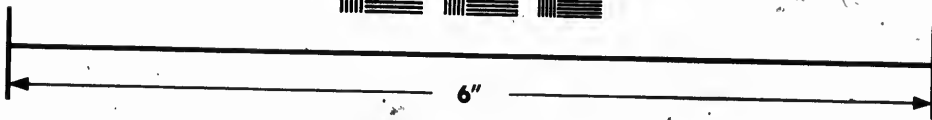








**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

0
E 28
E 32
E 22
E 20
E 18

10
11

- Tapis, ta-poe, *the carpet.*
 Tête-à-tête, tet a tet, *face to face, a private conversation.*
 Tout ensemble, tû-tang-sangbl, *the whole together.*
 Trait, trâ, *feature, touch, arrow, shaft.*
 Un bel esprit, oung bel e-spre, *a fine wit, a virtuoso.*
 Valet-de-chambre, va-lâ de shang'br, *a valet or footman.*
 Vis-à-vis, vâ-ra-vee', *over the way, opposite.*
 Vive le roi, veev le rwâ, *long live the king.*

LATIN PHRASES.

The pronunciation has not been added to the Latin, because every letter is sounded.

1. A long or short over a vowel denotes both the accented syllable and the quantity of the vowel in English.
2. Tî, cî, or sî, before a vowel sounds *sh*.
3. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first.

- A fortiori, with stronger reason, much more.
 A posteriori, from the effect, from the latter, from behind.
 A priori, from the former, from before, from the nature or cause.
 Ab initio, from the beginning.
 Ab urbe condita, from the building of the city; abridged thus, A.U.C.
 Ad captandum vulgus, to ensnare the vulgar.
 Ad infinitum, to infinity, without end.
 Ad libitum, at pleasure.
 Ad referendum, for consideration.
 Ad valorem, according to value.
 Alias (i-le-as), otherwise.
 Alibi (al-i-bl), elsewhere.
 Alma mater, the university.
 Anglice (ing-gil-cy), in English.
 Anno Domini, in the year of our Lord.—A.D.
 Anno Mundi, in the year of the world.—A.M.
 Arcanum, a secret.
 Arcana impèrii, state secrets.
 Argumentum ad fidem, an appeal to our faith.
 Argumentum ad hominem, an appeal to the professed principles or practices of the adversary.
 Argumentum ad iudicium, an appeal to the common sense of mankind.
 Argumentum ad passiones, an appeal to the passions.
 Argumentum ad populum, an appeal to the people.
- Audi alteram partem, hear the other party; hear both sides.
 Bona fide, in reality, in good faith.
 Cæsures scribendi, an tick for writing.
 Caput mortuum, the worthless remains; dead head.
 Cæteris (s) paribus, other circumstances being equal.
 Compos mentis, in one's senses.
 Contra, against.
 Cum privilegio, with privilege.
 Dâta, things granted.
 De facto, in fact, in reality.
 De jure, in right, in law. [God]
 Dei Grâtia, by the grace or favour of
 Deo volente (D. V.), God willing.
 Desideratum, something desirable, or much wanted.
 Desunt cætera, the rest is wanting
 Dômina dirige nos, O Lord direct us
 Dramatis personæ, characters represented.
 Durante placito, during pleasure.
 Durante vita, during life.
 Ergo, therefore.
 Errata, errors.—Erratum, an error
 Eato perpétua, let it be perpetual.
 Et cætera, and the rest; contr., &c
 Ex officio, officially, by virtue of office.
 Ex parte, on one side.
 Ex tempore, without premeditation
 Excerpta, extracts.
 Exempli grâtia, as for example; contracted. e. g.

Fac simile, exact copy or resemblance.
Fiat, let it be done or made.

Flagrante bello, during hostilities.
Gratis, for nothing.

Hera fugit, the hour or time flies.

Humānum est errāre, to err is human.

Ibidem, in the same place; contr., ib.

Id est, that is; contracted, i. e.

Idem, the same. [tender.

Ignorāmus, a vain uninformed pre-

Imprimis, in the first place.

In loco, in this place.

In propria persona, in his own person.

In statu quo, in the former state.

In terrōrem, as a warning.

Ipsē dixit, his sole assertion.

Ipsō facto, by the act itself.

Ipsō jure, by the law itself.

Item, also or article.

Jure divino, by divine right.

Jure humāno, by human law.

Jus gentium, the law of nations.

Labor omnia vincit, labour over-

comes everything.

Lapsus linguae, a slip of the tongue.

Licentia vatum, a poetical license.

Locum tenens, deputy, substitute.

Magna charta, the great charter; the

basis of our laws and liberties.

Memento mori, remember death.

Memorabilia, matters deserving of

record.

Meum et tuum, mine and thine.

Multum in parvo, much in little, a

great deal in few words.

Ne plus ultra, no farther, nothing

beyond.

Ne quid nimis, too much of one thing

is good for nothing.

Nem. con. (for nōmine contradicē-

te), none opposing.

Nem. dis. (for nōmine dissentiēte),

none disagreeing.

Nemo me impūne lacesset, no one

shall provoke me with impunity.

Nisi Dōminus frustra, unless the Lord

be with us, all efforts are in vain.

Nelens volens, willing or unwilling.

Non compos mentis, not of a sound

mind. [of speaking.

Norma loquendi, the rule or pattern

O tēpora, O mores, O the times,

O the manners.

Omnes, all. [anything.

Ous probandi, the burden of proving

Orō tēna, from the mouth only.

Pasim, everywhere.

Per diem, by the day

Per se, by itself, alone

Posse comitatū, the civil power of

the county.

Prima faciā, at first view, or at first

sight.

Primum mōbile, the main spring.

Pro bone publico, for the good of the

public.

Pro et con, for and against.

Pro forma, for form's sake.

Pro loco et tēpore, for the place

and time.

Pro re nata, as occasion serves.

Pro rege, lege, et grege, for the

king, the constitution, and the people.

Probatum est, it is tried or proved

Quo animo, with what mind.

Quo jure, by what right

Quoad, as far as.

Quondam, formerly.

Regina, a queen.

Res publica, the commonwealth.

Resurgam, I shall rise again.

Rex, a king.

Senātus consultum, a decree of the

Senātum, in regular order. [senate

Sine die, without specifying any par-

ticular day.

Sine qua non, an indispensable pro-

requisite or condition.

Statu quo, in the state in which it was.

Sub pōna, under a penalty.

Sui generis, the only one of his kind,

singular.

Summum bonum, the chief good.

Supra, above.

Tōties quoties, as often as.

Triajuncta in uno, three joined in one.

Ultimus, the last (contracted ult.)

Una voce, with one voice, unanimously.

Uti possidētis, as ye possess, or present

possession. [ant.

Utile dulci, the useful with the pleas-

ant. Vade mecum, go with me; a book fit

for being a constant companion.

Vale, farewell.

Verbātum, word for word.

Versus, against.

Veto, I forbid.

Via, by the way of.

Vice, in the room of.

Vice versa, the reverse.

Vide, see (contracted into v.)

Vide ut supra, see as above.

Vis poetica, poetic genius.

Viva voce, orally; by word of mouth

Vivant rex et regina, long live the

king and the queen.

Vox pōpuli, the voice of the people

Vulgo, commonly.

A
into
these

A
at lea

A
asser
flesh
ing i

A
plete
as, *H*
their

A
of w

• It h
only one

† Her
deals wi
person,
words a

APPENDIX.

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

ANALYSIS treats of the division of SENTENCES into their MEMBERS, and of the RELATIONS which these members bear to one another.

A *Sentence* is a combination of words making at least one complete assertion.

A sentence which makes only one complete assertion is called a *Simple** sentence; as, *All flesh IS grass. Nothing COULD STOP that astonishing infantry.*

A sentence which makes two or more complete assertions is called a *Compound* sentence; as, *He CHID their wanderings, but he RELIEVED their pain.*

A *Member* of a sentence is a word, or a group† of words, expressing a single idea; as, *The*

* It has already been observed (p. 81) that a simple sentence contains only one *finite verb*—that is, only one verb having number and person.

† Herein lies the difference between *analysis* and *parsing*. Parsing deals with each word in a sentence separately, specifying its number, person, gender, tense, mood, voice, &c. Analysis regards a *group* of words as a separate member when they express a single idea.

end | *of the pole* | *struck* | *George* | *smartly* | *on the head.* | *He* | *that hath knowledge* | *spareth his words.* |

Each member of a sentence may be a *word*, a *phrase*, or a *clause*.

A *Phrase* is a group of words expressing a single idea, but not containing a finite verb; as, *On the return* | *of spring.* *The ice having been* * *weak.* *To have been published.*

A *Clause* is a member of a sentence which contains a finite verb within itself; as, *When spring RETURNS.* *As the ice WAS weak.* *That it HAS BEEN PUBLISHED.*

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

Every Simple sentence may be divided into two parts,—the *Subject* and the *Predicate*.

The *Predicate* is that part of the sentence which *asserts* something; the *Subject* *names* the person or thing about which the assertion is made.

The part of speech which *asserts* is the *verb*; therefore every *predicate* must contain a *verb*.

The part of speech which *names* things is the *noun*; therefore every *subject* must contain a *noun*, or some word equivalent to a noun.

In proceeding to analyze a sentence, *first* find the *verb*: the verb and its adjuncts, or depen-

* Participles and infinitives are not *finite* verbs, as they have not person or number. They cannot therefore make assertions.

dent words, form the *predicate*: *secondly*, turn the predicate into a question beginning with *who?* or *what?* The answer will be the *subject*: e.g., Lord William sat at his castle gate. Here, *sat* is the verb; therefore, the *predicate* is *sat at his castle gate*. This, in the form of a question, is, *Who sat at his castle gate?* The answer is, *Lord William*; and that is the *subject*. The following examples show this general kind of analysis:—

Subject.	Predicate.
<i>Kings</i>	<i>reign.</i>
<i>British soldiers</i>	<i>are very hardy.</i>
<i>The Duke of Wellington</i>	<i>gained many victories.</i>
<i>[You]</i> *	<i>return quickly.</i>
<i>There</i> †	<i>is a tide in the affairs of men.</i>

EXERCISES.

Divide into Subject and Predicate. †

Boats sail. The wind blows. The mother was very tired. The good doctor has visited him frequently. The wife of our clergyman is dead. Walking is a healthy exercise. Never despair. To err is human. For many an hour the anxious mother watched her child. Hope deferred maketh the heart sick. Never was

* When the verb is in the imperative mood, the subject is usually omitted. In analyzing such sentences, the subject must be supplied.

† The true subject in this sentence is "a tide in the affairs of men." There is a pronoun standing in place of the true subject. Nevertheless such sentences had better be analyzed as above.

‡ Observe that the subject does not always stand first in the sentence, and that the words of the predicate do not always stand together.

assistance more necessary. A wounded spirit who can bear? Down came the blow. The steed along the drawbridge flies. Miserable comforters are ye all. How forcible are right words! The aged minstrel audience gained. Absence of occupation is not rest. Superfluous lags the veteran on the stage. To be of no church is dangerous. Necessity is the argument of tyrants. The trappings of a monarchy would set up an ordinary commonwealth. The poorest man may in his cottage bid defiance to all the force of the crown. Judge not according to the appearance. A borrower is servant to the lender. Drowsiness shall clothe a man with rags.

THE PARTS OF THE SUBJECT.

The *Subject* may be subdivided into the *Nominative* to the verb, and qualifying or dependent words called *Attributes*.

THE NOMINATIVE.

The *Nominative* is generally a *Noun* or *Pronoun*; but it may be any word or phrase equivalent to a noun. The following are examples of the different forms of the *Nominative*:—

A Noun; as, The new *master* has arrived.

A Pronoun; as, *He* is a very pleasant man.

An Adjective used as a Noun; as, *The rich* should care for the poor.

A Participle; * as, *The preparing* of the necessary materials requires time.

An Infinitive Phrase; † as, *To drink poison* is death.

THE ATTRIBUTE.

The *Attribute*, when it consists of a single word, is generally an *Adjective*; but it may consist of any qualifying word or phrase. The following are its different forms:—

An Adjective; as, The † *humble* boon was soon obtained.

A Participle; as, *Rolling* stones gather no moss.

A Noun in Apposition; § as, *William the Conqueror* died in France.

A Possessive Case; as, *Henry's* promises were always kept. *Her* tears flowed fast.

A Prepositional Phrase; as, The *quality of mercy* is not strained. The *spots on the sun* are said to vary from year to year.

Several attributes || may qualify the same noun; as, *The valiant Edward, the Black Prince, son of Edward III.*, died a year before his father.

* See p. 66, Rule XII.

† See p. 63, and p. 101, Rule XX.

‡ As the article is inseparable from the noun to which it is attached, it is not considered an *attribute*.

§ Nouns or pronouns signifying the same thing, and agreeing in case, are said to be in *apposition*. See p. 63, Rule VII. part 2.

|| In analyzing, the different attributes to the same noun should be numbered separately; 1, 2, 3, &c.

EXERCISES.

*Divide into Nominative, Attribute, and Predicate.**

Honest men make many friends. The pictures in this book are very beautiful. His brother deceived him. Cowper the poet died in 1800. Heaps of wounded and slain dotted the side of the hill. King Charles the First was an unfortunate monarch. The arrival of the doctor put an end to our suspense. The shepherd's dog caught a hare. The best reward of the virtuous man is the approval of his conscience. A forgiving spirit is better than riches. Richard Crookback was a cruel king. The parting gleam of sunshine kissed that haughty scroll of gold. A foreign nation is a contemporaneous posterity. Full many a flower is born to blush unseen. The sentinel on Whitehall gate looked forth into the night. Burned Marmion's swarthy cheek like fire. The paths of glory lead but to the grave.

Many a shaft, at random sent,
Finds mark the archer never meant.

Affliction's sons are brothers in distress. This goodly frame, the earth, seems to me a sterile promontory.

THE PARTS OF THE PREDICATE.

The *Predicate* may be subdivided into the finite *Verb*, its *Complements*, and its *Adverbials*.

* *Example:* A thing of beauty is a joy for ever. *Nominative*, a thing; *attribute*, of beauty; *predicate*, is a joy for ever.

nu
It
ex

per
ma

The

ver

2
inco

Phi

amo

T

nam

So

comp

taug

(1) h

(1) h

In

comp

secon

taugh

* See

‡ See

THE VERB.

A *Finite Verb* is a verb which has person, number, and tense; or which has a nominative. It is therefore any part of the verb (pp. 34-40) except the Infinitive and the Participles.

THE COMPLEMENT.

The *Complement* is any word or phrase depending upon a verb that does not of itself make complete sense; e.g.,

*The Objective** case after a transitive verb; as, The keeper shot a hare.

The Infinitive† mood governed by another verb; as, He promised to forgive me.

The Word or Phrase‡ following a verb of incomplete predication; as, Milton was a poet. Philip became haughty. His drawings were amongst the best.

The Nominative Case after a passive verb of naming; § as, The new scholar is called David.

Some verbs are followed by *more than one* complement of different kinds; as, His father taught (1) *him* (2) *reading*. The emperor made (1) *his son* (2) *a general*. The judge ordered (1) *him* (2) *to be imprisoned*.

In the passive voice of these verbs, the first complement is made the nominative, and the second remains as the complement; as, He was taught *reading* by his father. The emperor's

* See p. 88, Rule II.

† See p. 72, and p. 90, Rule IX.

‡ See p. 87, Rule VI.

§ See p. 90, foot-note, par. 4.

son was made a general. He was ordered to be imprisoned.

The Complement, like the Nominative, may be accompanied by *attributive* words or phrases;* as, The midnight brought the signal sound of strife.

EXERCISES.

On the Complement.†

Shakespeare is our greatest dramatist. The tenant was ordered to leave the farm. William conquered Harold. The hawk pursued a sparrow. Gentleness overcomes many foes. The Home Secretary made his friend a bishop. Procrastination is the thief of time. The Irish guns continued to roar all night. I make the netted sunbeams dance. The prisoner was declared to be guilty. Pope wrote the *Essay on Man*. Elizabeth was resolute and self-willed. George, the Elector of Hanover, became King of England. Young men think old men fools. Virtue is its own reward. The meeting was thought ominous by the people. Henry was violent in temper. Beauty soon grows familiar to the lover. Care keeps his watch in every old man's eye. She never told her love. Such joy ambition finds. Let this great maxim be

* In analyzing, each attribute of the Complement should be enclosed in brackets.

† Examples: Milton was a great poet; Complement, a (great) poet. The general commanded the infantry to advance; Complements, (1) the infantry, (2) to advance.

my
the
lost
was
orate
cond
the
edge
creat
a ha
his
the s

Th
to th
speci

Ac
to th

me
sig
we
wh

on
has

* The
Absolute
native (C
dition, d

my virtue's guide. One touch of nature makes the whole world kin. Her form had yet not lost all its original brightness. His third son was named Edmund Burke, after the great orator. He is often asked his name. He was condemned to die. We were taught history by the clergyman. The blow blunted the keen edge of his sword. Marlborough was next created a Duke. The father has given his son a handsome volume. He has never sent me his address. The general immediately gave the signal to advance.

THE ADVERBIAL.

The *Adverbial* is any word or phrase added to the verb in order to modify its meaning, or specify some circumstance about it.

Adverbials are classified as follows, according to the ideas they express, viz. :—

Adverbials of Time; soon, thrice, immediately, in a few-minutes, for a month, the signal being given; as, *The signal being given*,* we began the attack; *i. e.* we began the attack *when* the signal was given.

Adverbials of Place; here, hence, thither, on the ground, to Egypt; as, *The expedition has gone to Egypt*.

* This is called an *Absolute Phrase*, corresponding with the *Ablativus Absolutus* in Latin Syntax. The noun *signal* is said to be in the Nominative Case Absolute. The Absolute Phrase also expresses *cause, condition, &c.*

Adverbials of Manner; thus, well, by accident, with his face to the foe; as, He was found *with his face to the foe*.

Adverbials of Degree; much, not, so, as, but (only), in a great measure, not at all; as, I blame him *in a great measure* for the accident.

Adverbials of Cause;* therefore, for that reason, to read the newspapers, of the plague; as, Hundreds died *of the plague* every day.

Adverbials of Effect; to distraction, in ruin, to prove him innocent; as, All this goes to *prove him innocent*. This will end *in ruin*.

Adverbials of Condition; † with perseverance, time permitting; as, *Time permitting*, † I shall explain the matter; *i.e., if time permits*.

Adverbials of Concession; § nevertheless, notwithstanding his failure; as, he persevered, *notwithstanding his failure*; *i.e., though* he had failed.

An Adverbial may be attached to an adjective or to an adverb, as well as to a verb; as, He returned *much more* quickly than he went. A

* Purpose is included in this class. When I say, "He goes there to read the newspapers," the purpose of his going is the cause why he goes.

† In an Adverbial of Condition, something is supposed as the reason of something else following; as, *With perseverance* he will succeed; *i.e., if he perseveres, he will succeed*.

‡ An Absolute Phrase. See p. 189, note.

§ In an Adverbial of Concession, something is granted as the reason why something else should not follow; as, *In spite of his efforts* he failed, *i.e., it is granted that he made efforts, but, contrary to our expectations, he failed*.

general victorious *by accident* deserves little credit. But the *Adverbial* of the sentence in analysis belongs only to the verb of the predicate.

EXERCISES.

*On the Adverbial.**

The captain ~~is~~ gone to Rome. The doctor has called thrice at the hotel. Both brothers died of fever. She loved him to distraction. He will undoubtedly succeed. The explanation in no respect satisfies us. With care he may recover his position. He nevertheless behaved like a coward. Ships of war are made of iron, to resist cannon-balls. The answer being unfavourable, the attack on the forts was recommended. The station was decorated with banners and evergreens. Slowly and sadly we laid him down. The bonfires shone bright along the whole circuit of the ramparts. Notwithstanding the efforts of the crew, the cargo was entirely lost. I have often left my childish sports to ramble in this place. Weather permitting, we shall go to the country on Thursday. The captain altogether misunderstood the orders of his superior. In spite of repeated warnings, he persisted in incurring the danger. I come to bury Cæsar, not to praise him. Cowards die many times before their deaths.

* Example: He arrived in London at four o'clock. *Adverbials*, (1) in London (*place*), (2) at four o'clock (*time*).

The following Table exhibits the different members of the Simple Sentence in their different forms:—

SUBJECT.		PREDICATE.			
		Attributa.	Nominative.	Verb.	Complement.	Adverbial.
Adjective.		Noun.	Finite	Noun (with or without attributes).	Adverb.
Possessive.		Pronoun.	Verb in any Mood	Pronoun.	...
Apposition.		Adjective.		Adjective.	...
Phrase.		Infinitive.		Infinitive.	...
		Phrase.		Phrase.	Phrase.

KINDS OF PHRASES.

A phrase in the Attribute is called an *Adjective* or *Attributive Phrase*; a phrase in the Nominative or Complement is called a *Noun Phrase*; a phrase in the Adverbial is called an *Adverbial Phrase*.

EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS.

1. Old men often make mistakes.
2. The thundering roar of the lion only increased the confusion.
3. I therefore asked him the circumstances of his deception.
4. Let me no longer waste the night on the page of antiquity.
5. Meantime Nelson received a severe wound in the head.
6. The service past, around the pious man,
With ready zeal each honest rustic ran.

FIRST STEP.

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
1. Old men	often make mistakes.
2. The thundering roar of the lion	only increased the confusion.
3. I	therefore asked him the circumstances of his deception.
4. [Thou]	let me no longer waste the night on the page of antiquity.
5. Nelson	meantime received a severe wound in the head.
6. Each honest rustic	ran around the pious man, with ready zeal, the service past.

COMPLETE ANALYSIS.

SUBJECT.		PREDICATE.		
<i>Attr-Date.</i>	<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>Verb.</i>	<i>Complement.</i>	<i>Adverbial.</i>
1. Old	men	make	mistakes	often (<i>st.</i>)
2. (1) thundering (2) of the lion	The roar	increased	the confusion	only (<i>deg.</i>)
3. ...	I	asked	(1) him (2) the circumstances (of his deception)*	therefore (<i>cause</i>)
4. ...	[Thou]	let	(1) me (2) waste (the night on the page of antiquity)*	no longer (<i>st.</i>)
5. ...	Nelson	received	a (severe) wound	(1) in the head (<i>pl.</i>) (2) meantime (<i>st.</i>)
6. (1) Each (2) honest rustic		ran	...	(1) the service past (<i>st.</i>) † (2) around the pious man (<i>pl.</i>) (3) with ready zeal (<i>mean.</i>)

* Attributes to the Complement, and Adjuncts to the Adverbial, should be enclosed in round brackets; words supplied, in square brackets.

† For, the service being past; an *Abolished Phrase*; see p. 189, note.

EXERCISES.

Simple Sentences for Analysis.

It is a splendid picture. You are certainly mistaken. Now, every considerable town has its daily newspaper. Many years have passed since his death. Nothing can exceed his kindness. There were several literary men there. Observe the moon to-night. We shall proceed no further in this business. At length the caliph approached him reverently. On my birthday, my brother sent me a delightful book. You wronged yourself to write in such a case. I was touched with a secret joy at the sight of the good old man. Their ammunition being exhausted, the garrison surrendered. My friend Sir Roger, being a good churchman, has beautified the inside of his church with several texts of his own choosing. The French admiral had moored his fleet in Aboukir Bay. Put the Word of God into the hands of my son. His noble conduct well deserved honourable reward. A man's first care should be to avoid the reproaches of his own heart. Things remaining thus, the secretary's character will suffer greatly. The first two ships of the French line were dismasted in a quarter of an hour.

With taper light

To seek the beauteous eye of heaven to garnish,
Is wasteful and ridiculous excess.

Notwithstanding the most heroic efforts, the hopes of the French visibly declined from day to day. Now for the first time, I observed,

* Attributes to the Complement, and Adjuncts to the Adverbial, should be enclosed in round brackets; words supplied, in square brackets.
† For, the services being past; an Absolute Phrase; see p. 189, note.

walking close to the feet of his horse, a little boy about ten years of age.

Meanwhile, our primitive great sire to meet,
His godlike guest walks forth.

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

When any member of a simple sentence—that is, of a sentence containing only one independent assertion—is in the form of a clause, the sentence is called *Complex*; as, *A man who is learned** is respected.

In a *Complex Sentence*, there are at least two finite verbs, and therefore at least two clauses. The clause containing the leading assertion is called the *Principal Clause*; as, *A (certain) man is respected*. The clauses containing explanatory assertions are called *Subordinate Clauses*; as, *Who is learned*, &c.

A *Principal* clause may stand by itself and make complete sense; as, *A man is respected*: a *Subordinate* clause cannot make complete sense by itself; as, *Who is learned*.

A *Subordinate* clause may further be known by this,—that it is always introduced by a relative pronoun, or by a conjunction, which marks its dependence on some part of the principal clause; as, *He is ill because he is unhappy*.
We started as the clock struck. The book

* A man who is learned, is the same as a man of learning or a learned man. The sentence is therefore simple and not compound, inasmuch as it contains only one complete assertion; but since it contains an Attribute in the form of a clause, it is called complex.

which you gave me is lost. The mother cried *that* her child was drowning.

In Analysis, the words used to introduce clauses, or to join them together, are called *Connectives*.

Subordinate Clauses are of three kinds, corresponding with the three kinds of phrases mentioned above (p. 193), viz.:—*Adjective Clauses*, which qualify nouns or describe things; *Noun Clauses*, which stand for nouns or name things; and *Adverbial Clauses*, which modify verbs, adjectives, and adverbs.

THE ADJECTIVE CLAUSE.

Any clause which *describes* a thing, or which is attached to a noun or pronoun, is an *Adjective Clause*; as, The house *that Jack built*. The place *where I was born*. He *whom ye seek*.

The *Adjective* clause is generally introduced by a relative pronoun, the antecedent of which is the word qualified by the clause. Even when such words as *when, where, why, &c.*, are used to introduce clauses, each of them may be resolved into a preposition and a relative—in *which, at which, for which, &c.*; as, The place *where (in which) I was born*.

A *Compound Relative* * introducing an adjective clause, must be resolved into a demonstrative and a relative; as, Show me *what* you have found, *i.e.*, show me *that, which* you have found.

* See p. 18; also pp. 69, 70; and K. p. 43.

Whoever said so spoke falsely, *i.e.*, *Any one* spoke falsely, *who* said so.

When this separation is made, the demonstrative forms part of the principal clause, and the relative belongs to the subordinate clause.

When the antecedent is omitted,* it must be supplied before the sentence is analyzed; as, *Who* steals my purse steals trash, *i.e.*, *He* steals trash, *who* steals my purse.

When the relative is in the objective case, it is often omitted;* as, It is not easy to love those (*whom*) we do not esteem.

Sometimes a relative in the nominative case is omitted, when its antecedent immediately precedes the subordinate verb; as, I have a brother (*who*) is condemned to die.

After negatives, the adjective clause is frequently introduced by *but*, meaning *which not* or *that not*; as, There is *not* one of his works *but* shows marks of care and study; *i.e.*, *which* does *not* show marks of care and study.

The *Adjective* clause may be attached to a noun or pronoun in any part of the sentence; *e.g.* :—

In the Nominative; as, He *whom ye seek* is not here.

In the Attribute; as, The spire of the church *which we attend* was struck by lightning.

* See p. 77; and K. p. 83, 9.

In the Complement; as, I have twice read the book which you lent me.

In the Adverbial; as, He died in the house which was given him by the queen.

EXERCISES.

*On Adjective Clauses.**

The man who painted that picture is dead. I often think of the night which I spent with you. What you report may be quite true. He who tells a lie knows not what a task he undertakes. I have lately visited the place where I spent the happy years of my boyhood. I am monarch of all I survey. Who was the thane lives yet. The treaty of Westphalia, which terminated the Thirty Years' War, was concluded in 1648. I saw two gentlemen by me, who were in the same ridiculous circumstances. A shower then overtook us, which compelled us to seek shelter.

Not a soldier discharged his farewell shot
O'er the grave where our hero we buried.

I may do that I shall be sorry for. Strive to do only that is right. It seemed as if the English people had, in this brief period, utterly forgotten the mighty princess whose reign had been so glorious, and over whose bier they had so lately mourned.

The nurse sleeps sweetly, hired to watch the sick,
Whom snoring she disturbs.

* Example: I have just seen the lady who wrote that letter. *Adjective clause, who wrote that letter, describing lady.*

I have often wandered in fields which are now covered with houses. The frame of the picture that you gave me is beautifully carved. There is no one but believes in his honesty. Nothing which I could do would repay you for the kindness with which you have treated me, ever since the day when we first became friends.

There is no fireside, howso'er defended,
But has one vacant chair.

THE NOUN CLAUSE.

Any clause which *names* a thing, or which occupies the place of a noun in any part of the sentence, is a *Noun Clause*; as, I believe *that he has deceived me*. *That you have wronged me* is quite evident.*

The *Noun* clause is generally introduced by the conjunction *that*; † but the conjunction is often omitted; as, It is said (*that*) he has failed.

When two or more *Noun* clauses are stated alternatively, the first is introduced by *whether*, the others by *or*; as, I cannot discover *whether* the letter was composed by himself, *or* was written by him to his father's dictation.

Sometimes only one alternative is stated, the other being implied. In this case the *Noun* clause is introduced by the conjunctions *whether*

* The test of the noun clause is that the word "something" may always be put in its place; e.g., I believe *something*—namely, that he has deceived me. *Something* is quite evident—namely, that you have wronged me.

† This conjunction is really the demonstrative pronoun, used to point out the clause following it.

and *if*; as, It is uncertain *whether* he is ready (or not). Ask him *if* he will help you.

A quotation is generally a *Noun* clause, governed by such words as *he said, the author thinks, it is a well-known saying*; as, Burke says, that "early and provident fear is the mother of safety."

When the *Noun* clause expresses an opinion, or states a fact, the principal clause may be in the form of a parenthesis; as, Every one (I think) will acknowledge the importance of classical learning; *i.e.*, I think *that* every one, &c.

The *Noun* clause may contain an implied question; as, Tell me *where you live*.

The *Noun* clause is frequently in apposition to the pronoun *it*; as, Elizabeth, it is true, often spoke curtly to her parliaments; *i.e.*, *It* (namely, *that* Elizabeth often spoke curtly to her parliaments) is true.

EXERCISES.

*On Noun Clauses.**

We believe that he is honest. That he is brave is unquestionable. I have been told he is a great gambler. I doubt whether he speaks the truth. That thou art happy owe to God. I'll warrant we'll never see him sell his hen on a rainy day. He could not be brought to believe that his sister was dead. They say there is divinity in odd numbers. I would that

* *Example*: They say that he has lost his manuscript. *Noun clause*, that he has lost his manuscript, *objective case, governed by say*.

I were low laid in my grave. Ask him whether he is ready.

Yet some maintain that to this day
She is a living child.

I would the gods had made thee poetical. I have often thought, says Sir Roger, it happens very well that Christmas should fall out in the middle of winter. No observation is more common, and at the same time more true, than that one half of the world are ignorant how the other half lives. These, I found, were all of them politicians. Milton says beautifully that truth is as impossible to be soiled by any outward touch as the sunbeam. Ask him if he is aware of your success.

Whether he was combined
With those of Norway, or did line the rebel
With hidden help and vantage, or that with both
He laboured in his country's wrack,—I know not.

Every one, I think, will acknowledge the justice of the verdict. Reading, says Bacon, maketh a full man, conference a ready man, and writing an exact man.

But, that thou shouldst my firmness therefore doubt
To God or thee, because we have a foe
May tempt it, I expected not to see.

THE ADVERBIAL CLAUSE.

Any clause which occupies the place of an adverb, or which modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb, is an *Adverbial Clause*; as, He came *when he was called*. He goes as often as *he can*. I shall do it *if I am asked*.

by
The
tha
abo

r
a
h

n
e
r

n
H

n
is
li

n
th
S
y

* A
act, ✓
The su
dent o
† In
lative
other,
clever
first ca
‡ (In
as of p

The nature of *Adverbial* clauses is indicated by the conjunctions which introduce them. Their classification corresponds exactly with that of adverbial words and phrases given above (p. 189). It is as follows:—

Clauses of Time, introduced by the connectives *when, while, whenever, since, before, after, until, &c.*; as, The letter arrived *while he was there*.

Clauses of Place, introduced by the connectives *where, whither, whence, wherein, wherever, &c.*; as, He goes *wherever he pleases*. He remained *until I arrived*.

Clauses of Manner, introduced by the connectives *as, as if*; as, He speaks *as he thinks*. He acts *as if he were innocent*.*

Clauses of Degree, introduced by the connectives (so) *as, (more) than, &c.*; as, William is not so clever *as his brother [is clever]*. William is cleverer *than his brother [is clever]*.†

Clauses of Cause, introduced by the connectives *because, for, since, as, why, (in order) that, † but*; as, He went *because he was told*. *Strive, that you may succeed*. Take heed *lest ye fall*.

* *As if* is elliptical. The full sentence would be, He acts *as he would act, if he were innocent*. The true clause of manner is *as he would act*. The subsequent clause, *if he were innocent*, is a clause of condition dependent on "as he would act."

† In each of these examples, the connective is preceded by a correlative or corresponding word: in the one case the adverb *so*; in the other, the comparative *cleverer*. In both examples the degree of William's cleverness is measured by comparison with that of his brother. In the first case the degree is that of *equality*, in the second of *inequality*.

‡ (In order) *that* and *lest* express *purpose*, which in the case of clauses, as of phrases, is included under *cause*. See p. 190, note*.

Clauses of Effect, introduced by the connective (so) *that*; as, *He speaks so low that we cannot hear him.*

Clauses of Condition, introduced by the connectives *if, unless*; as, *If I were invited, I should go. Unless I am invited, I shall not go.*

Clauses of Concession, introduced by the connectives *though, although*; as, *Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.*

EXERCISES.

*On Adverbial Clauses.**

He acted as he was told. He started when he heard the news. Let it lie where it has fallen. If you persevere, you are sure to succeed. We are often so tempted that resistance seems impossible. He will remain where he is until he is sent for. Since you are wrong, you must have made some mistake. Although he was poor, he was always contented. Unless you are quiet you will hear nothing. He did not go, as he was told to remain at home. The noise pursues me wheresoe'er I go. When I am in a serious humour, I very often walk by myself in Westminster Abbey. You have more circumspection than is wanted. Although we seldom followed advice, we were all ready enough to ask it. He speaks to me as if he were my master. The climate of England is

* *Example: I cannot write to my cousin, as I have lost his address. Adverbial clause, as I have lost his address, expressing cause.*

not so mild as that of France. He passed me so quickly that I did not recognise him. If you have tears, prepare to shed them now. As my heart was entirely subdued by the captivating strains I had heard, I fell down at his feet.

Eternal smiles his emptiness betray,
As shallow streams run dimpling all the way.

I will roar that I will do any man's heart good to hear me.

Had I your tongues and eyes, I'd use them so
That heaven's vault should crack.

Wherever they marched, their route was marked with blood. If there be anything that makes human nature appear ridiculous to men of superior faculties, it must be pride. The rest were long to tell, though far renowned. As soon as the sun arose, all their boats were manned and armed.

When here, but three days since, I came,
Bewildered in pursuit of game,
All seemed as peaceful and as still
As the mist slumbering on yon hill.

There are *three methods* of analyzing complex sentences:—(1.) They may simply be divided into *clauses*, the nature of each clause being specified; (2.) They may be analyzed in exactly the same way as simple sentences, only the principal clause being divided into its members; (3.) All the clauses, subordinate as well as principal, may be divided into their members.

Before analyzing any complex sentence, *contractions* must be expanded, and *ellipses* supplied; as, A man who is mean, or cowardly, or indolent, will not do for the post; *i.e.*, A man who is mean, or [*who is*] cowardly, or [*who is*] indolent, &c. What cannot be cured, must be endured; *i.e.*, *That* (*which* cannot be cured) must be endured. Who live to nature rarely can be poor; *i.e.*, *Those* (who live to nature) rarely can be poor.

EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS.

1. He is well paid that is well satisfied.
2. That thou art happy, owe to God.
3. At about half a mile's distance from our cabin, we heard the groanings of a bear, which at first startled us.
4. When Henry the Fifth came within sight of that prodigious army which offered him battle at Agincourt, he ordered all his cavalry to dismount.
5. In truth there is no sadder spot on the earth than that little cemetery.
6. You have done that you should be sorry for.

FIRST, OR SIMPLEST, METHOD.

1. A.* He is well paid
 - a. That is well satisfied. (*Adjective* to "He.")

* An easy and convenient method of indicating the relations of the clauses to one another, is to mark each principal clause by a capital letter, as A, and each subordinate clause by a corresponding small letter, as a. This simple notation is borrowed from Dr Dalgleish's "Grammatical Analysis."

2. A. Owe [thou] to God
 - a. That thou art happy. (*Noun, comp. to "owe."*)
3. A. At about half a mile's distance from our cabin, we heard the groanings of a bear,
 - a. Which at first startled us. (*Adj. to "groanings."*)
4. A. He ordered all his cavalry to dismount,
 - a. When Henry the Fifth came within sight of that prodigious army, (*Adverbial of time to "ordered."*)
 - a. Which offered him battle at Agincourt. (*Adj. to "army."*)
5. A. In truth there is no sadder spot on the earth
 - a. Than that little cemetery [is sad]. (*Adv. of degree to "sadder."*)
6. A. You have done that
 - a. For [*which*] you should be sorry. (*Adj. to "that."*)

Note.—The Second and Third Methods of Analysis are given in the following pages. It will be observed in these tables that every principal verb is printed in **SMALL CAPITALS**, and every subordinate verb in *italics*.

He.")

ons of the
a capital
ing small
Baigleish's

SECOND METHOD.

	SUBJECT.		Verb.	PREDICATE.	
	Attribute.	Nominative.		Complement.	Adjective.
1.	that is well satisfied	He	IS PAID	...	well. (manner)
2.	...	[Thou]	OWNS	(1) that thou art happy (2) to God.	...
3.	...	We	HEARD	the groanings (1. of a bear), (2. which at first startled us),	at about half a mile's distance from our cabin. (place)
4.	...	he	ORDERED	(1) all his cavalry (2) to dismount.	When Henry the Fifth came within sight of that prodigious army (time) (which offered him battle at Agincourt),
5.	...	There	IS	no sadder spot (than that little cemetery [is sad], adv. to "sadder.")	(1) on the earth (pl.) (2) in truth (deg.)
6.	...	You	HAVE DONE	that [for [which] you should be sorry).	...

THIRD METHOD.

	Letter.	Kind of Clause.	Connec- tive.	SUBJECT.		PREDICATE.		
				Attribute.	Nominative.	Verb.	Complement.	Adjunct.
1.	A. a.	Adj.		...	He that	IS PAID is satisfied	" ..."	well (man.) well. (man.)
2.	A. a.	N.	that	..	[Thou] thou	OWE art	to God happy.	... ...
3.	A. a.	Adj.		... ...	We which	HEARD startled	the groanings (of a bear) us	at ... cabin, (pl.) at first. (si.)
4.	A. a. a.	Adv. Adj.	When	... the Fifth ...	he Henry which	ORDERED came offered	(1) all his cavalry (2) to dismount. ... (1) him (2) battle	within. army (pl.) at Agincourt, (pl.)
5.	A. a.	Adv.	than	... that little	There cemetery	IS [is]	[no sadder] spot [sad].	(1) on the earth (pl.) (2) in truth (deg.)
6.	A. a.	Adj.		... ...	YOU you	HAVE DONE should be	that sorry.	... for which (ca.)

HAVE DONE THAT (FOR [WHEN] YOU SHOULD BE SORRY).

YOU

...

...

EXERCISES.

Complex Sentences for Analysis.

The prisoner declared that he was innocent. He that runs may read them. When the princess arrived, she received a splendid bouquet. Though he is above seventy, he is an active man of business. Unless he perseveres he will never succeed. He sat for several hours motionless where the rivers meet. The citadel where he shut himself up after his defeat was stormed in the following week. Their diadems were crowns of glory which should never fade away. Those had little reason to laugh who encountered them in the field of battle. Such was the dust with which the dust of Monmouth mingled. Nothing is so dangerous as pride. One of the company told me that it would play there above a week longer if the thaw continued. Mercy becomes the throned monarch better than his crown. Whatever is, is right. Fools rush in where angels fear to tread. Such treatment I did not expect, for I never had a patron before. Those who are rich are not always so happy as their poorer neighbours. If it had not been that I had tested his fidelity before, I could not have believed him. My valet, who was an Irishman, fell into so great a rage at what he had heard, that he drew his sword. When I compare the figure which the Dutch make in Europe with that they assume in Asia, I am struck with surprise.

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

A *Compound Sentence* is a sentence that contains two or more complete assertions, or principal clauses; as, The father *makes* money, and the son *spends* it. I *hate* innovation, but I *love* improvement.

The several principal clauses in a compound sentence are said to be *co-ordinate* with one another, because they are independent of one another, and each of them makes complete sense by itself.

Any principal clause in a compound sentence may have *subordinate clauses* attached to it; as, The father, *who is industrious*, makes money; and the son, *who is extravagant*, spends it as fast as *he can*.

CONTRACTED SENTENCES.

When a member common to two or more clauses is expressed only once, the sentence is said to be *contracted*: as, Its motion is circular, not progressive; *i.e.*, Its motion is circular, [*its motion is*] not progressive. Death had lost its terrors, and pleasure its charms; *i.e.*, Death had lost its terrors, and pleasure [*had lost*] its charms.

The principal members of compound sentences are connected by the conjunctions *and*, *either — or*, *neither — nor*, and *but*. Sometimes the conjunction is omitted; as, The wind roared, the rain came down in torrents; it was a terrible night.

There are *three methods* of analyzing compound sentences:—(1.) They may simply be divided into clauses; (2.) Each leading member may be analyzed in the same way as simple sentences, only the principal clauses being divided into their members; (3.) All the clauses, subordinate as well as principal, may be divided into their members.

EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS.

1. We said that the history of England is the history of progress; and when we take a comprehensive view of it, it is so.
2. At church, with meek and unaffected grace,
His looks adorned the venerable place;
Truth from his lips prevailed with double sway,
And fools who came to scoff, remained to pray.

FIRST, OR SIMPLEST, METHOD.

1. A. We said
 - a. That the history of England is the history of progress;
 - B.* And it is so,
 - b. When we take a comprehensive view of it.
2. A. At church, with meek and unaffected grace,
his looks adorned the venerable place;
- B. Truth from his lips prevailed with double sway,
- C. And fools remained to pray
- c. Who came to scoff.

* Applying the notation already explained (p. 206, note) to compound sentences, we mark each principal clause with a different capital letter, A, B, C, &c.; the clauses subordinate to clause A are marked a; those subordinate to clause B are marked b, and so on.

SECOND METHOD.

Letter.	Connective.	SUBJECT.		PREDICATE.		
		Attribute.	Nom.	Verb.	Complement.	Adverbial.
1.		...	We	SAID	that the history of England is the history of progress;	...
	and	...	it	IS	so	when we take a comprehensive view of it. (it.)
2.		His	looks	ADORNED	(the venerable) place	(1) at church (pl.) (2) with meek and unaffected grace; (man.)
B.		from his lips	truth	PREVAILED	...	with double sway, (man.)
C.	and	who came to scoff	fools	REMAINED	...	to pray. (pur.)

com-ly be member simple ng di-causes, dived

is the rehen-

ace,

sway, pray.

ory of

f it. grace, ; double

to com- t capital marked

THIRD METHOD.

Letter.	Kind of Clause.	Consecutive.	SUBJECT.		Verb.	PREDICATE.	
			Attributive.	Nominative.		Complement	Adverbial.
1.							
A.	Noun		...	We	SAID	...	...
a.		that	of England	the history	<i>was</i>	the history (of progress);	...
B.	Adv.	and	...	it	IS	so	...
b.		when	...	we	<i>take</i>	a (comprehensive) view (of it).	...
2.							
A.			His	looks	ADORNED	the (venerable) place	(1) at church (<i>pl.</i>) (2) with meek and unaffected-grace; (<i>man.</i>)
B.			from his lips	truth	PREVAILED.	...	with double sway, (<i>man.</i>)
C.	Adj.	and	...	fools	REMAINED	...	to pray. (<i>pur.</i>)
c.			...	who	<i>came</i>	...	to scoff. (<i>pur.</i>)

EXERCISES.

Compound Sentences for Analysis.

The general had three daughters, and he left each of them a fortune. He had many relatives, but he died without a friend. I could make nothing of it, and therefore asked in what language it was written. When Sir Roger sees any one sleeping in church, he either wakes them himself, or sends his servant to them. Charles had two brothers; the one became a bishop, and the other, who had entered the navy, was drowned in the Mediterranean. Henry the Fifth manifestly derived his courage from his piety, and was scrupulously careful not to ascribe the success of it to himself. Impudence is a vice, and absurdity a folly. The impudent are pressing, though they know they are disagreeable; the absurd are importunate, because they think they are acceptable. A long series of ancestors shows the native with great advantage at the first; but, if he any way degenerate from that, the least spot is visible on ermine. Almost every man's thoughts, while they are general, are right; and most hearts are pure while temptation is away. It is one thing to write because there is something which the mind wishes to discharge; and another thing to solicit the imagination, because ceremony or vanity requires something to be written.

Full well the busy whisper, circling round,
 Conveyed the dismal tidings when he frowned;
 Yet was he kind, or, if severe in aught,
 The love he bore to learning was in fault.

to scoff. (par.)

...

came

who

...

Adj.

c.

The French have long been acknowledged to have much bravery: a great part of Europe has owned their superiority in this respect; and I know scarcely any country but that which has beaten them that dares assert the contrary.

Slaves cannot breathe in England: if their lungs
Receive our air, that moment they are free;
They touch our country, and their shackles fall.

The alms of the settlement in this dreadful exigency were certainly liberal, and all was done by charity that private charity could do: but it was a people in beggary; it was a nation which stretched out its hands for food.

Who steals my purse steals trash: 'tis something, nothing;
'Twas mine, 'tis his, and has been slave to thousands;
But he that filches from me my good name,
Robs me of that which not enriches him,
And makes me poor indeed.

Wh
Into

Of w
Wh
vo
Wh
co
Wh
Wh
Wh

Of w
Nam

Wh
Nam
*Wh
*Wh
*Wh
*Wh
pl

Wh
Wh
How
for
1. W
pl
2. H
pl
3. H
th
4. W
pl
5. M
for
6. M
ma
7. M
sar
*Mer
pl
*Wh
pl
*Wh
*Wh
lan

Questions for Oral and Written Examinations.

(The Questions on the *Observations* are marked with an asterisk.)

What is English Grammar?
Into what parts is it divided?

*Mention singular nouns which may be used with a plural verb.

Orthography.

Of what does *orthography* treat?
What is a *vowel*? Name the vowels.
What is a *consonant*? Name the consonants.
What is a proper *diphthong*?
What is an *improper diphthong*?
What is a *syllable*?

Gender.

Name the *genders*, and say what each denotes.
What are the different ways of distinguishing sex?
*What does *neuter* mean and denote?
*Give examples of nouns that are either masculine or feminine.
*When do neuter nouns become masculine or feminine?

Etymology.

Of what does *etymology* treat?
Name the parts of speech.

Case.

What are the *cases* of nouns?
How is the possessive *singular* formed?
How is the possessive *plural* formed?
*What does *case* denote?
*What does each case denote?

Noun.

What is a *noun*?
Name the *kinds* of nouns.
*What are *collective* nouns?
*What are *abstract* nouns?
*What are *verbal* nouns?
*When have *proper* nouns a plural?

Adjective.

What is an *adjective*?
What is an *article*?
Name and distinguish the articles.
When is *a* used? When *an*?
*When is *a* used before *u*?
*In what sense is a noun taken, when no article precedes it?
*When is *a* used before nouns in the plural?
*How is *the* used?
Name the *degrees* of comparison.
How is the *comparative* formed?
How is the *superlative* formed?
When is final *y* changed into *i*?
*What does each *degree* express?
*How are adjectives of more than one syllable compared?
*Mention superlatives formed by adding *most* to the comparative.
*Give an example of a noun used as an adjective; and of an adjective used as a noun.
*Mention adjectives which do not properly admit of comparison.
*Distinguish between *much* and *many*; *older* and *elder*.
Mention adjectives which are compared irregularly.

Number.

What are the *numbers* of nouns?
What does each denote?
How is the *plural* generally formed?
1. What nouns take *es* in the plural?
2. How do nouns in *y* form the plural?
3. How do nouns in *f* or *fe* form the plural?
4. What nouns take *en* in the plural?
5. Mention nouns that have two forms of the plural.
6. Mention nouns that have anomalous plurals.
7. Mention nouns that are the same in both numbers.
*Mention nouns that have foreign plurals.
*What classes of nouns want the plural?
*What nouns have no singular?
*What nouns are sometimes singular, sometimes plural?

Pronoun.

What is a *pronoun*?
Name the *kinds* of pronouns.

Personal Pronouns.

Enumerate the *personal* pronouns.
How are they distinguished?
What are the two forms of the possessive case of the personal pronouns?

- *What is the difference between *my* and *mine*, *thy* and *thine*?
- *Is the form *her's* correct?
- *What are the *compound* personal pronouns?
- *What is *self* when used alone?
- *Which are the correct forms of the possessive case of the personal pronoun?

Relative Pronouns.

What is a *relative* pronoun?
Name the *simple relatives*, and say how each is used.

Name the *compound relative*.

- *What are *interrogatives*?
- *In what does the *relative* agree with and differ from its antecedent?
- *When may *who* be used of the inferior animals?
- *What *relatives* may be used as adjectives?
- *Mention *compound* relatives.

Indefinite Pronouns.

Mention the different kinds of indefinite pronouns, with examples.

- *Mention *demonstrative* pronouns, besides *this* and *that*.
- *Show the different uses of *that*.
- *What should the *indefinite* pronouns (except *none*) be considered?
- *What should *none* other be?

Verb.

What is a *verb*?
Name the *kinds* of verbs, and say what each expresses.

- *What are *transitive* verbs? Why are they so called?
- *What are *intransitive* verbs? Give examples.

- *What does *neuter*, when applied to verbs, mean?
- How are verbs inflected?
- What are the *numbers* of the verbs?
- How many *persons* has the verb?
- Name the *moods*, and the *voices*.

Tense.

What does *tense* mean?
Name the *tenses*; and say what each expresses.

- What is the *participle*?
- *What does the participle in *-ing* denote?
- *What does the participle in *-ed* denote?
- *What does the *perfect* participle denote?
- What are the *auxiliary* verbs?
- How should they be regarded?
- *Explain the proper uses of *shall* and *will*.
- How is the *progressive* form of the verb conjugated?
- How, the *emphatic* form?

Conjugation.

What is a *regular* or *weak* verb?
What, an *irregular* or *strong* verb?
What are *defective* verbs?

Adverb.

- What is an *adverb*?
- Name the *classes* of adverbs.
- *Compare the use of *adverbs* with that of *adjectives*.
- *How are *adverbs* compared?
- *What are most words ending in *ly*?
- *How are they usually compared?

Preposition.

- What is a *preposition*?
- *What *case* does every preposition require after it?
- *Mention words that are sometimes *prepositions* and sometimes *adverbs*.

Conjunction.

- What is a *conjunction*?
- Name the *kinds* of conjunctions.
- How are the *co-ordinative* conjunctions used? Give examples.
- How are the *subordinative* conjunctions used? Give examples.
- *Show the various uses of *since*.

Interjection.

What is an *interjection*?

Syntax.

Of what does *syntax* treat?

*Define the two parts of syntax.

*Define *concord* and *government*.

What determines the *number* and *person* of a verb? (I.)†

What *case* does an *active verb* govern? (II.)

When do *two or more singular nominatives* take a verb in the *plural*; when in the *singular*? (IV.)

What do *conjunctions* couple? (V.)

In what *mood* does one verb govern another? (VI.)

Names the verbs after which to is omitted before the *infinitive*. (VI.)

*When is a noun put in the *possessive case*? (VII.)

When do two nouns *agree in case*? (VII.)

When is a *noun of multitude* treated as *singular*; when as *plural*? (VIII.)

What *case* does the verb *to be* take after it? (IX.)

What sentences require the *subjunctive mood*? (X.)

After what *verbs* is the *pass. participle* used? (XIII.)

In what does a *pronoun* agree with the word for which it stands? (XIV.)

In what does a *relative* agree with its *antecedent*? (XV.)

With which of two *antecedents* does the *relative* agree? (XVI.)

With which of two *singular nominatives* separated by *or* or *nor* does the verb agree in *person*? (XVII.)

In what number do a *singular* and a *plural nominative* separated by *or* or *nor* require the verb to be? (XVIII.)

What is an *improper use* of the *noun* and its *pronoun*? (XIX.)

What *person* must the verb be when an *infinitive mood* or a *part of a sentence* is its *nominative*? (XX.)

What is said of *double comparatives* and *superlatives*? (XXI.)

What is said of *two negatives* in the same sentence? (XXII.)

Where should *adverbs* be placed? (XXIII.)

What use of *adverbs* and *adjectives* is improper? (XXIV.)

After what are *than* and *as* used? (XXV.)

What determines the *case* of a *noun* after *than* or *as*? (XXVI.)

Of what *number* are the nouns and verbs with which the *distributive pronouns* agree? (XXVII.)

To which of two *contrasted* things do *this* and *that* respectively refer? (XXVIII.)

What is the correct use of *to*, *at*, and *in* before names of places? (XXXI.)

*When should the *latter* of two nouns after a *comparative* have *no article* before it? (XXXIV.)

*When is an *ellipsis* not allowable? (XXXVI.)

*Give an example of *ambiguity* (p. 138.)

*What is *tautology*? (p. 139.)

*When do *two or more singular nouns* coupled by *and* require a verb in the *singular*? (p. 143.)

*What does the clause introduced by *and not* form? (p. 143.)

*In what number should the verb be when its *nominatives* are qualified by *every*? (p. 144.)

*When do two nouns coupled by *with* take a *singular verb*; when a *plural*? (pp. 144, 145.)

*When should the article be repeated before each of several *adjectives*? (pp. 146, 147.)

*When is it proper to use *they*; when, *those*? (p. 147.)

*To what does *another* properly correspond? (p. 148.)

*What *demonstratives* should be used in referring to things *present* or *just mentioned*? (p. 148.)

*How should *as* be construed in *as follows*, *as appears*? (pp. 148, 150.)

*When are *means* and *amends* to be treated as *singular*; when, as *plural*? (pp. 150, 151.)

† Those numerals relate to the Rules of Syntax.

- *What is the difference between *so* and *such*? (p. 151.)
- *What is the difference between *disappointed of* and *disappointed in*? (p. 151.)
- *What is the difference between *taste of* and *taste for*? (p. 152.)
- *What is the *case absolute*? (p. 152.)
- *When may an intransitive verb govern an *objective*? (p. 154.)

Capitals.

Give rules for the use of capital letters. (p. 155.)

Punctuation.

- What is *punctuation*? (p. 159.)
- What are the chief *points* used in writing?
- By what are the *simple* members of a compound sentence separated?
- When is the *comma* used between two words of the *same* part of speech?
- Give other rules for the use of the *comma*.
- What is the use of the *semicolon*? (p. 163.)
- Where is the *colon* used? (p. 164.)
- What are the uses of the *period*? (p. 165.)

Prosody.

- Of what does *prosody* treat? (p. 167.)
- Define *accent* and *quantity*.
- Define *emphasis* and *pause*.
- *To what does *tone* refer?
- Explain the two *kinds of verse*.
- Explain *feet* and *scanning*.
- Name and explain the *feet* in most common use.
- To what is *iambic* measure adapted?
- What is the character of *trochaic* measure?

Figures of Speech.

- What is a *figure of speech*?
- Define *personification*.
- Distinguish between *simile* and *metaphor*.
- What is an *allegory*?
- Define *hyperbole* and *irony*.
- Distinguish *metonymy* from *synecdoche*.
- What is the object of *antithesis*?

Explain *climax*.

- What does *exclamation* express?
- What is the effect of *interrogation*?
- What does *paralepsis* mean?
- Define *apostrophe*.

Analysis of Sentences.

- Of what does *analysis* treat?
- What is a *sentence*?
- What is a *simple* sentence?
- What is a *compound* sentence?
- What is a *member* of a sentence?
- Distinguish between a *phrase* and a *clause*.

Simple Sentence.

- Into what two *parts* may every simple sentence be divided?
- Define the *predicate* and the *subject*.
- Into what *parts* may the *subject* be subdivided?
- Into what *parts* may the *predicate* be subdivided?
- What is a *finite verb*?
- How are *adverbials* classified?
- What are the different *kinds of phrases*?

Complex Sentence.

- When is a sentence called *complex*?
- What are the *two kinds of clauses* which it contains?
- How may a *subordinate clause* be known?
- Mention the *kinds of subordinate clauses*.
- What is an *adjective clause*?
- By what is it generally introduced?
- What is a *noun clause*?
- By what is it generally introduced?
- What is an *adverbial clause*?
- By what is the *nature of adverbial clauses* indicated?
- Mention the different *kinds*.
- Before analyzing a *complex sentence*, what should be done?

Compound Sentence.

- What is a *compound sentence*?
- What is the relation between its *principal clauses*?
- What may any *principal clause* have attached to it?
- What is a *contracted sentence*?
- How are *co-ordinate clauses* connected?
- Describe the *three methods of analyzing compound sentences*.

express?
rogation?
an?

ences.
eat?

e?
ence?
ntence?
hphrase and

nce.
may every
vided?
the *subject*.
a *subject* be
e *predicate*?

ified?
t kinds of

ence.
ed *complex*?
ts of *clauses*

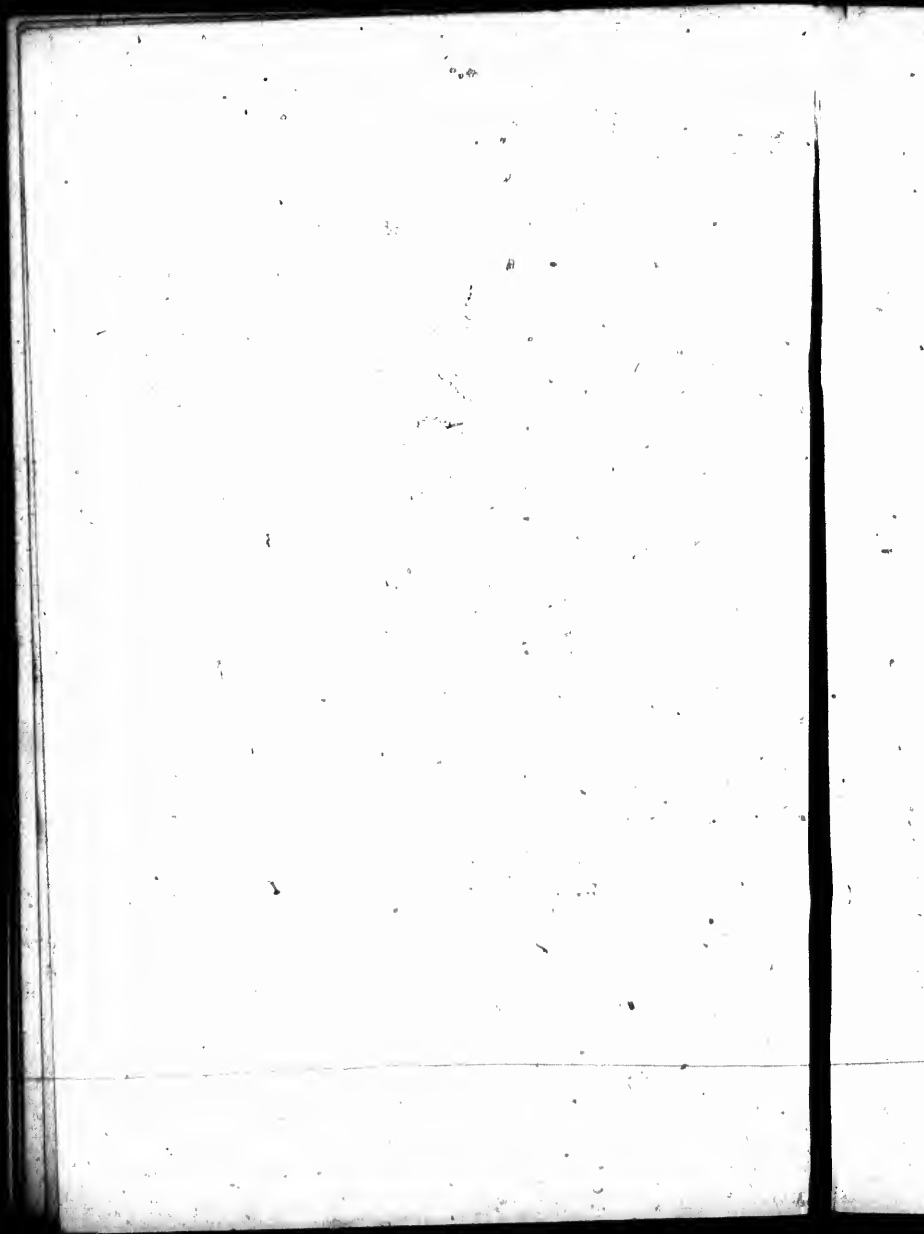
ts *clause* be
subordinate

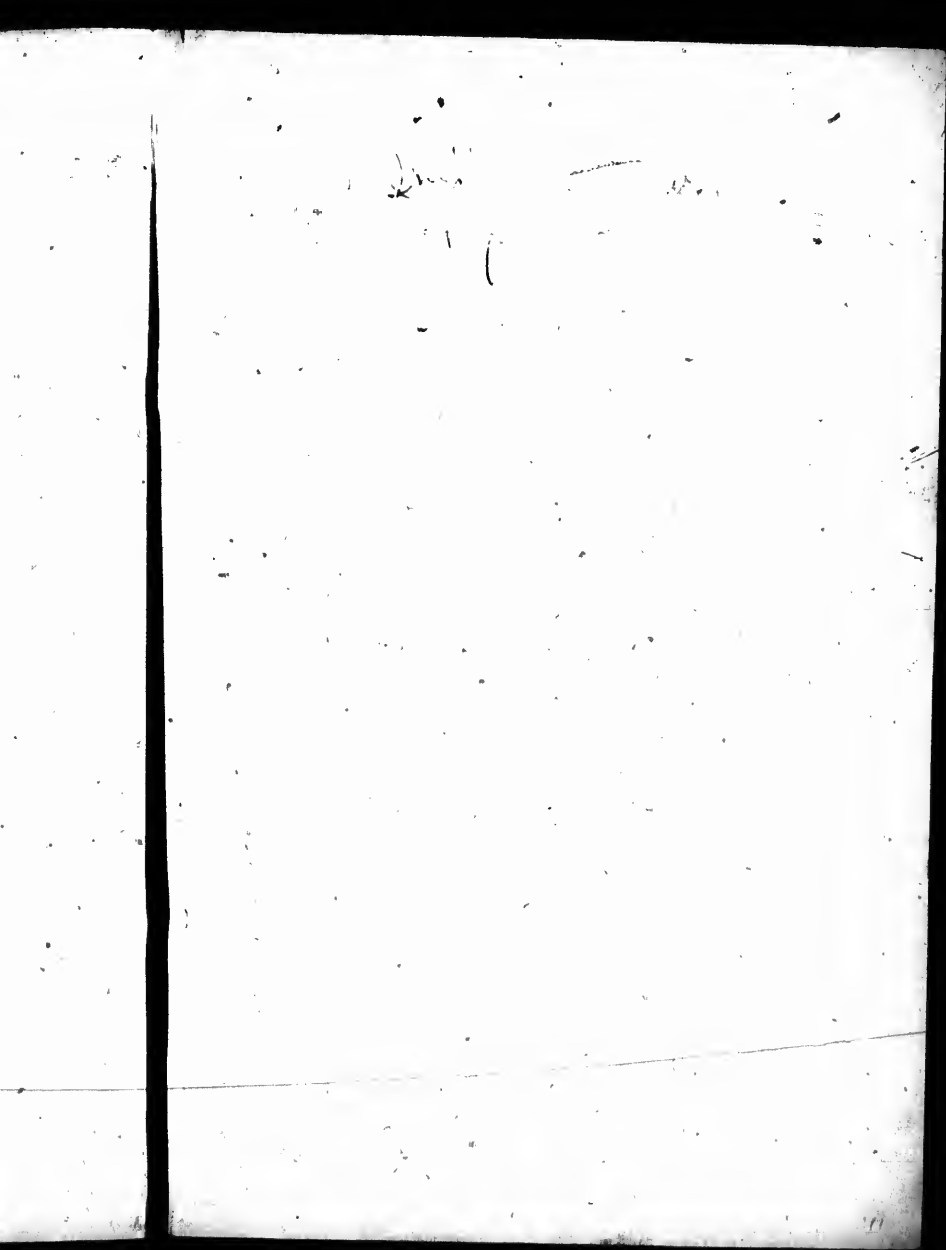
use?
introduced?
introduced?
clause?
of adverbial

kinds.
complex *sen-*
be done?

ntence.
ntence?
between its

ncipal *clause*
? sentence?
clauses con-
ethods of ana-
sentences.





TO EDUCATORS

CATHOLIC SCHOOL BOOKS

Sadlier's Dominion Catholic Reading Charts, 26 Reading Charts and one Chart of colors, mounted on 14 boards, Size 23½ x 32½ inches. per set: \$9.00		\$9.00
Sadlier's Dominion Catholic Speller, complete.....		20
Sadlier's Dominion Catholic First Reader, Part I.....		07
Sadlier's Dominion Catholic First Reader, Part II.....		10
Sadlier's Dominion Catholic Second Reader.....		25
Sadlier's Dominion Catholic Third Reader.....		35
Sadlier's Dominion Catholic Fourth Reader.....		40
Sadlier's Outlines of Canadian History.....		25
Sadlier's Catholic School History of Canada, large edition, in preparation.....		25
Sadlier's Outlines of English History.....		25
Sadlier's Catholic School History of England, with 6 colored maps.....		75
Sadlier's Ancient and Modern History, with illustrations and 23 colored maps.....		1.00
Sadlier's Edition of Butler's Catechism.....		08
Sadlier's Edition of Questions and Objections concerning Catholic Doctrine and practices answered by Most Rev. J. J. Lynch, D. D., late Archbishop of Toronto.....		10
Sadlier's Child's Catechism of Sacred History, Old Testament Part I.....		10
Sadlier's Child's Catechism of Sacred History, New Testament Part II.....		10
Sadlier's Catechism of Sacred History, large edition.....		15
Sadlier's Bible History (Schuster) illustrated.....		60
Sadlier's Elementary Grammar, truth Blackboard exercises.....		60
Sadlier's Edition of Grammaire Élémentaire par E. Robert, Authorized by the Educational Department of Ontario.....		20
Sadlier's Edition of Nugent's French and English, English and French Dictionary with Pronunciation.....		60
Sadlier's (P D & S) Copy Books, A and B, with tracing.....		05
Sadlier's (P D & S) Copy Books, Nos. 1 to 5, primary short course.....		05
Sadlier's (P D & S) Copy Books, Nos. 1 to 12, advanced course.....		05
Sadlier's Patent Cover and Blotter, for primary short course.....		05
Sadlier's Patent Cover and Blotter, for advanced course.....		05
Sadlier's Edition of First Steps in Science, by Maurice F. Egan, M. A. L. L. D.....		30
Sadlier's Edition of Lectures on Literature, by Maurice F. Egan, M. A. L. L. D.....		30
Sadlier's Edition of Novels and Novelists, by Maurice F. Egan, M. A. L. L. D.....		30
Sadlier's Edition of Points of Etiquette for Girls.....		30
Sadlier's Edition of How Boys Should Behave.....		30
Sadlier's Edition of St. Joseph Manual.....		50
Sadlier's Edition of The Scholar's Manual of the Sacred Heart.....		50
Sadlier's Edition of The Angel of The Schools.....		50

D. & J. SADLIER & CO.,

1669 NOTRE DAME STREET,

123 CHURCH STREET,

Half a block east of the Church of Notre Dame,

Two doors south of Queen Street.

MONTREAL



